

Lingít Yoo X'atángi
A Grammar of the
Tlingit Language

James A. Crippen

Department of Linguistics, University of Hawai'i at Mānoa
jcrippen@gmail.com

Dzéiwsh

Kakáak'w Hít yeedáx, Deisheetaan Naax, Shtax'héen Kwáan

Draft of 15 April 2010.
Please do not distribute without permission.

The Crippen Press
Mō'ili'ili, Honolulu, Hawai'i

Copyright © 2007–2010 James A. Crippen.

All rights reserved. This book, or parts thereof, may not be duplicated in any form without permission from the author. Exceptions granted for non-commercial educational use.

Hypothetical Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication data.

Crippen, James A.

Lingít yoo x'atángi : a grammar of the Tlingit language / James A. Crippen.

p. cm.

Includes bibliographical references and index.

ISBN 978-0-123-45678-9 (pbk? : alk. paper?)

1. Tlingit language—Grammar. 2. Tlingit language—Phonology. 3. Tlingit language—Verb.
4. Tlingit language—Texts. I. Crippen, James A. II. Title.

PM 2455.C1 2010

497'.xx—dc22

LCCCN 2010-1234X

Possibly printed in the United States of America.

17 16 15 14 13 12 11 10
10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

© This book may be printed on paper and thus may meet the minimum requirements of ANSI Z39.48-1992 (Permanence of paper for printed library materials) or ISO 9706:1994 (Paper for documents – Requirements for permanence).

Typeset on 15 April 2010 at 12:59 HST (UTC–10).

Composed by the author with X_Y-L^AT_EX 3.1415926-2.2-0.9995.2 (TeX Live 2009), Fontspec 1.18, Memoir class 1.61803398b (pl 6.of), BibL^AT_EX 0.8i, Hyperref 6.79e, PST-jTree 2.4, ExPex 1.0(β), Enumitem 2.2, and T_EXShop 2.30 on Mac OS X 10.6.2. Set in Linux Libertine 4.6.5 (glosses condensed 10%) with URLs in Calibri 5.62 and the title in Gentium Italic 1.02.

Tsu héide shugaḵtutaan, yáa yaakoosgé daakéit, haa jéex' anák has kawduk'éet'.

ts ^h u	hé:te	ʃukaxt ^h ut ^h a:n	já:	ja:q ^h u:ské	ta:k ^h é:t
cu	hé:de	ʃugaḵtuta·n	yá·	ya·qu·ské	da·ké·d
tsu	héi-dé	∅-shu-gaḵtu-∅-taan	yáa	yaakoosgé	daakéit
again	MPRX-ALL	3O-end-FUT.1PL.S-CL[-D,∅,-I]-handle,	PROX	knowledge	box

ha:	tʃi:x'	anáq	has k ^h awtuk'í:t'
ha·	ʒi·x'	anáq	has kawduk'í·t'
haa	jín-x'	a-nák	has-ka-ÿu-du-∅-k'éet'
	1PL.PSS	hand-LOC	it-ELAT 3PL-HSFC-PFV-3OBV.O-CL[-D,∅,-I]-leave

‘again hither we.will.open.it, this knowledge box, our hands.in without.it they.left’

“We will open it again, this box of wisdom, which was left in our hands.”

— Kichnáalx, George Davis

This page will contain acknowledgements.

Contents overview

Contents overview	i
Table of contents	vi
List of tables	xxiv
List of figures	xxvi
Chapter 1. Introduction	1
1.1 The name	3
1.2 Organization of the grammar	5
1.3 Typological summary	9
1.4 Literature review	15
Chapter 2. The Tlingit people	29
2.1 Location	29
2.2 Traditional culture	36
2.3 Regional kwáan organization	37
2.4 Language status	38
Chapter 3. Sounds	39
3.1 Consonants	40
3.2 Vowels	48
3.3 Word structure	51
3.4 Phonotactics and phonological processes	54
3.5 Dialectology	56
3.6 Borrowing and adaptive phonology	58
3.7 Prosody and intonation	58
3.8 Writing	59

Chapter 4. Nouns	60
4.1 Basic phonological structure	67
4.2 Possession and alienability	67
4.3 Diminutive <i>-k'(w)</i>	68
4.4 Plural	68
4.5 Cases and postpositions	70
4.6 Relational nouns	73
4.7 Demonstratives	73
4.8 Compounding	74
4.9 Noun derivation	74
4.10 Pronominals and pronouns	75
4.11 Demonstratives	82
4.12 Quantifiers	82
4.13 Directionals	82
4.14 Kinship	82
4.15 Names	82
Chapter 5. Adjectives	91
5.1 Adjectives and degree words	91
5.2 Attributinal and predicational adjectives	92
5.3 Prenominal adjectives	92
5.4 Postnominal adjectives	93
5.5 Deverbal adjectives and the attributive	93
5.6 Numerals	94
5.7 Colors	94
Chapter 6. Adverbs	95
6.1 Noun-derived	95
6.2 Directional-derived	95
6.3 Verb-derived	95
Chapter 7. Particles	96
7.1 Focus particles	97
7.2 Sentence-initial evidentials	99
7.3 Phrasal particles	100
Chapter 8. Verb structure	104
8.1 Macrostructure of the verb	104

8.2	Lexical specification: The verb theme	110
8.3	The root	114
8.4	Prefixes and proclitics	119
8.5	Suffixes	156
Chapter 9.	Verb function	178
9.1	Tense-mood-aspect system	178
9.2	Dependent clauses	180
9.3	Transitivity	181
9.4	Incorporation	181
9.5	Lexical classes	181
9.6	Classificatory verbs and noun classes	183
Chapter 10.	Syntax	189
10.1	Word order	189
10.2	Transitivity	191
10.3	Sentence types	191
10.4	Focus	192
10.5	Topic	192
10.6	Pronouns and anaphora	192
10.7	Relativization	193
10.8	Phrase structure	193
10.9	Conjunction and coordination	193
10.10	Ellipsis	193
Chapter 11.	Discourse phenomena	194
11.1	Code-switching	194
11.2	Reference tracking	197
11.3	Point of view	197
11.4	Functions of relatives	197
11.5	Tense/aspect/mood in narratives	197
11.6	Topic shift	197
11.7	Word order	197
11.8	Ellipsis	197
Chapter 12.	Language contact	198
12.1	Russian	198
12.2	Chinook Jargon	198

12.3	English	198
12.4	Effects on other languages	198
Chapter 13. Genealogy		200
13.1	Pre-Tlingit	200
13.2	Leer's endohybrid hypothesis	200
13.3	Proto-Na-Dene	200
13.4	Dene-Yeniseic hypothesis	200
Appendices		202
Appendix A. Sample texts		203
A.1	Other sources for written Tlingit	203
A.2	Other sources for spoken Tlingit	203
A.3	Conversational text	203
A.4	Oral history text	203
Appendix B. Dictionary		204
B.1	Verb themes	204
B.2	Nouns	204
B.3	Others	204
Appendix C. Phoneme illustrations		205
C.1	Consonants	205
C.2	Vowels	208
Appendix D. Verb paradigms		209
D.1	S cook O <i>O-S-CL[-D, s]-?ee</i>	210
D.2	S eat O <i>O-S-CL[-D, s]-xaa</i>	210
Appendix E. Abbreviations		218
Appendix F. Symbols		221
Appendix G. Glossary		225
Citation Abbreviations		226
Bibliography		227

Contents overview

Names index	233
Languages index	236
Topical index	237

Table of contents

Contents overview	i
Table of contents	vi
List of tables	xxiv
List of figures	xxvi
Chapter 1. Introduction	1
1.1 The name	3
1.2 Organization of the grammar	5
1.2.1 Citations	5
1.2.2 Transcription conventions	6
1.2.3 Glossing	7
1.2.4 Personal names	8
1.3 Typological summary	9
1.3.1 Sounds	9
1.3.2 Nouns	10
1.3.3 Demonstratives	13
1.3.4 Adjectives	13
1.3.5 Numerals	14
1.3.6 Adverbs	15
1.3.7 Verbs	15
1.3.8 Evidentiality	15
1.3.9 Word order	15
1.4 Literature review	15
1.4.1 Early explorers	16
1.4.1.1 Chirikov, 1741	16

1.4.1.2	La Pérouse, 1786	19
1.4.2	Russian America	24
1.4.2.1	Veniaminov, 1840s	24
1.4.2.2	German philologists, 1850s–1880s	26
1.4.3	Early U.S. period	26
1.4.4	Kelly and Willard	27
1.4.5	Swanton	27
1.4.6	Boas and Shotridge	27
1.4.6.1	Other Boasian authors	27
1.4.7	J.P. Harrington	27
1.4.8	Twentieth century anthropologists	27
1.4.9	Naish and Story	28
1.4.10	The present	28
1.4.10.1	Krauss	28
1.4.10.2	Dauenhauers	28
1.4.10.3	Leer	28
1.4.10.4	Cable	28
1.4.10.5	Crippen	28
Chapter 2. The Tlingit people		29
2.1	Location	29
2.1.1	Coastal Tlingit	30
2.1.2	Interior Tlingit	36
2.2	Traditional culture	36
2.2.1	Moiety and clan organization	36
2.3	Regional <i>kwáan</i> organization	37
2.3.1	Maritime	38
2.3.1.1	Tongass	38
2.3.1.2	Southern	38
2.3.1.3	Transitional	38
2.3.1.4	Northern	38
2.3.2	Interior	38
2.4	Language status	38
2.4.1	Population decline	38
2.4.2	Language death phenomena	38
2.4.3	Community attitudes	38
2.4.4	Revitalization efforts	38

Chapter 3. Sounds	39
3.1 Consonants	40
3.1.1 Inventory	40
3.1.2 Contrasts	41
3.1.2.1 Aspiration	43
3.1.2.2 Ejection	43
3.1.2.3 Labialization and rounding	43
3.1.2.4 Alveolar nasal variation	43
3.1.3 Articulation	43
3.1.3.1 Places of articulation	43
3.1.3.2 Manners of articulation	45
3.1.3.3 Airflow	45
3.1.4 Ejective fricatives	45
3.1.4.1 Synchronic analysis	45
3.1.4.2 Typological comparisons	45
3.1.4.3 Diachronic hypotheses	45
3.1.5 Rare consonants	45
3.1.5.1 Dialectal bilabial and the lack of labials	45
3.1.5.2 Marginal labial glottals	45
3.1.5.3 Lateral approximant for alveolar nasal	45
3.1.5.4 Extinct velar approximant	45
3.2 Vowels	48
3.2.1 Vowel inventory	49
3.2.1.1 Minimal pairs	49
3.2.1.2 Formant structure	49
3.2.1.3 Variation	49
3.2.1.4 Diachronic issues	49
3.2.2 Suprasegmental phenomena	49
3.2.2.1 Length	49
3.2.2.2 Nasalization and lack thereof	49
3.2.2.3 Tone	49
3.2.2.4 Tongass vowel system	51
3.3 Word structure	51
3.3.1 Syllables	51
3.3.1.1 Consonant clusters	51
3.3.1.2 Fricative syllables	51
3.3.2 Word boundary phenomena	52
3.3.2.1 Word-initial onset filling	52

3.4	Phonotactics and phonological processes	54
3.4.1	Consonants not occurring in verbs	54
3.4.2	Sequences	54
3.4.2.1	Typologically unusual sequences	54
3.4.2.2	Disallowed sequences	54
3.4.2.3	Rare sequences	54
3.4.3	Labialization spread	54
3.4.3.1	Consonantal labialization	54
3.4.3.2	Vowel rounding	54
3.4.4	Delabialization	55
3.4.4.1	Consonantal delabialization	55
3.4.4.2	Vowel unrounding	55
3.4.5	Tone sandhi	55
3.4.5.1	Sandhi vs. pitch accent	55
3.4.6	Denasalization	55
3.4.7	Prenasalization in compounds	55
3.4.8	Consonant assimilation	55
3.4.9	Lexical alternations	55
3.4.9.1	Fricative alternations	55
3.4.9.2	Obstruent alternations	55
3.4.9.3	Place alternations	55
3.4.9.4	Vowel alternations	55
3.5	Dialectology	56
3.5.1	Northern dialect	56
3.5.1.1	Archipelago subdialect	56
3.5.1.2	Gulf Coast subdialect	56
3.5.1.3	Interior subdialect	56
3.5.2	Transitional dialect	56
3.5.3	Southern dialect	57
3.5.3.1	Sanya subdialect	57
3.5.3.2	Henry subdialect	57
3.5.3.3	Speculations about communilects	57
3.5.4	Tongass dialect	57
3.6	Borrowing and adaptive phonology	58
3.6.1	Labial accomodation	58
3.6.2	Voiced lateral accomodation	58
3.6.3	Voicing accomodation	58
3.6.4	Accent conversion	58

3.6.5	Loanword inventories	58
3.6.5.1	Northwest Coast languages	58
3.6.5.2	Athabaskan languages	58
3.6.5.3	Russian	58
3.6.5.4	Chinook Jargon	58
3.6.5.5	English	58
3.7	Prosody and intonation	58
3.7.1	Intonation	58
3.7.1.1	Interactions between intonation and tone	58
3.7.1.2	Declarative intonation	58
3.7.1.3	Question intonation	58
3.8	Writing	59
3.8.1	Transcription systems	59
3.8.1.1	Emmons	59
3.8.1.2	Swanton	59
3.8.1.3	Boas	59
3.8.1.4	Frederica de Laguna 1	59
3.8.1.5	Naish and Story	59
3.8.1.6	Frederica de Laguna 2	59
3.8.1.7	Leer	59
3.8.2	Archaic orthographies	59
3.8.2.1	Veniaminov	59
3.8.2.2	Kelly and Willard	59
3.8.3	Modern orthographies	59
3.8.3.1	Naish and Story	59
3.8.3.2	Revised popular	59
3.8.3.3	Canadian	59
3.8.3.4	E-mail	59
Chapter 4.	Nouns	60
4.1	Basic phonological structure	67
4.2	Possession and alienability	67
4.2.1	Alienability	67
4.2.1.1	Unpossessable nouns	67
4.2.1.2	Alienable nouns	67
4.2.1.3	Inalienable nouns	68
4.2.2	Possessive pronouns	68
4.2.3	Possessive suffix	68

4.3	Diminutive <i>-k'(w)</i>	68
4.4	Plural	68
4.4.1	Plural suffix <i>-x'(w)</i>	68
4.4.2	Plural <i>hás</i>	68
4.4.3	Human collective <i>sáani</i>	68
4.4.4	Kin collective <i>yán</i>	69
4.5	Cases and postpositions	70
4.5.1	Grammatical cases	70
4.5.1.1	Ergative	70
4.5.1.2	Absolutive	70
4.5.2	Local cases	70
4.5.2.1	Locative <i>-x'</i> , <i>-i</i> , <i>-i</i> , <i>∅-</i>	71
4.5.2.2	Allative <i>-déi</i>	71
4.5.2.3	Ablative <i>-dáx</i>	71
4.5.2.4	Perlative <i>-náx</i>	71
4.5.2.5	Adessive <i>-ḡaa</i>	71
4.5.2.6	Instrumental <i>-een</i> , <i>-teen</i> , <i>-n</i>	71
4.5.2.7	Punctual <i>-t</i>	71
4.5.2.8	Pertingent <i>-x</i>	72
4.5.2.9	Locative predicative <i>-u</i>	72
4.5.3	Postpositions	72
4.5.3.1	Similative <i>yáx</i>	72
4.5.3.2	Benefactive <i>yís</i>	72
4.5.3.3	Elicative <i>nák</i>	72
4.5.3.4	Abessive <i>ḡóot</i>	72
4.5.3.5	Superlative <i>yáanáx</i>	72
4.5.3.6	Sublative <i>kín</i>	72
4.6	Relational nouns	73
4.6.1	Concrete relations	73
4.6.2	Abstract relations	73
4.7	Demonstratives	73
4.7.1	Distance	73
4.7.2	Definiteness	73
4.7.3	Focus	73
4.7.4	Topic	73
4.8	Compounding	74
4.8.1	Tone phenomena in compounds	74
4.8.2	Relational and nonrelational compounding	74

4.8.3	Possessive compounds	74
4.8.4	Nonpossessive compounds	74
4.9	Noun derivation	74
4.9.1	Deverbal derivation	74
4.9.2	Noun-verb-noun derivation	74
4.10	Pronominals and pronouns	75
4.10.1	Personal pronouns	75
4.10.1.1	Possessive pronouns	77
4.10.1.2	Independent pronouns	78
4.10.1.3	Postpositional pronouns	79
4.10.2	Interrogative pronouns	81
4.10.2.1	What <i>daa(t)</i>	81
4.10.2.2	Which <i>daakw</i>	81
4.10.2.3	Who <i>aa</i>	81
4.10.2.4	Who <i>aadoo</i>	81
4.10.2.5	Where <i>goo</i>	81
4.10.2.6	How, why, what <i>wáa ~máa</i>	81
4.10.2.7	How much <i>x'oon</i>	81
4.10.2.8	When-past <i>gwatk</i>	81
4.10.2.9	When-future <i>gwatgeen</i>	81
4.11	Demonstratives	82
4.11.1	Nounlike qualities	82
4.11.2	Interaction with locative-predicative	82
4.12	Quantifiers	82
4.13	Directionals	82
4.14	Kinship	82
4.15	Names	82
4.15.1	Personal names	83
4.15.2	Clan names	83
4.15.3	Ethnonyms	86
4.15.4	Placenames	86
4.15.4.1	The great rivers	87
4.15.4.2	Major mountains	90
4.15.4.3	Kwáan and settlements	90
Chapter 5. Adjectives		91
5.1	Adjectives and degree words	91
5.2	Attributional and predicational adjectives	92

5.3	Prenominal adjectives	92
5.3.1	<i>aak'é</i> “good”	92
5.3.2	<i>yées</i> “young”	92
5.3.3	<i>ch'áagu</i> “old”	92
5.3.4	<i>káa</i> “male”	92
5.3.5	<i>shéech</i> “female”	92
5.3.6	<i>kustín</i> “giant”	92
5.3.7	<i>kúnáx</i> “very”	92
5.3.8	<i>aatlein</i> “much, lots”	92
5.3.9	<i>shayadihéin</i> “many”	92
5.3.10	<i>oosk'</i> “cute”	92
5.4	Postnominal adjectives	93
5.4.1	<i>tlein</i> “large”	93
5.4.2	<i>k'átsk'u</i> “small”	93
5.4.3	<i>yádi</i> “child”	93
5.4.4	<i>xookw</i> “dry”	93
5.4.5	<i>k'áatl'</i> “thin”	93
5.5	Deverbal adjectives and the attributive	93
5.5.1	Morphology of the attributive	93
5.5.2	Uses of the attributive	93
5.5.3	Differences between attributive and subordinative	93
5.6	Numerals	94
5.6.1	Subdecimal numerals	94
5.6.2	Old vigesimal system	94
5.6.3	New decimal system	94
5.6.4	Cardinal numerals	94
5.6.5	Ordinal numerals	94
5.7	Colors	94
5.7.1	Similative color construction	94
5.7.2	Non-similative color constructions	94
5.7.3	Conventional colors	94
5.7.4	Novel colors	94
Chapter 6. Adverbs		95
6.1	Noun-derived	95
6.2	Directional-derived	95
6.3	Verb-derived	95
6.3.1	Adverbializer <i>-dein</i>	95

6.3.2	Abessive adverbs	95
Chapter 7.	Particles	96
7.1	Focus particles	97
7.1.1	Interrogatives	98
7.1.1.1	Wh-question <i>sá</i>	98
7.1.1.2	Yes/no-question <i>gé</i>	98
7.1.1.3	Focused Yes/no-question <i>ágé</i>	98
7.1.2	Focus <i>á</i>	98
7.1.3	Contrastive <i>ku.aa</i>	98
7.1.4	Evidentials	98
7.1.4.1	Deductive <i>ásé</i>	98
7.1.4.2	Reportative <i>ásgé</i>	98
7.1.4.3	Softening <i>xaa</i>	98
7.1.4.4	Hypothetical <i>óosh</i>	98
7.1.4.5	Tentative <i>kwshé</i>	98
7.1.4.6	Dubitative <i>shágdé</i>	98
7.1.4.7	Confirmative (s) <i>dáagáa</i>	98
7.1.4.8	Mirative <i>shéi</i>	98
7.1.4.9	Admirative <i>gu.áa</i>	98
7.2	Sentence-initial evidentials	99
7.2.1	Negative <i>tléil</i> “no”	99
7.2.2	Prohibitive <i>lí</i> “don’t”	99
7.2.3	Optative <i>gu.áal</i> “hopefully”	99
7.2.4	Dubitative <i>gwál</i> “maybe”	99
7.2.5	Counterfactual <i>xaju</i> “actually”	99
7.2.6	Cogitavissive <i>kashde</i> “I’d thought”	99
7.2.7	Resumptive <i>ch’a.aan</i> “however”	99
7.2.8	Interpretive <i>ayáx</i> “that’s why”	99
7.2.9	Explanatory <i>ách</i> “because”	99
7.3	Phrasal particles	100
7.3.1	Prephrasal particles	100
7.3.1.1	<i>ch’a</i> “simply”	101
7.3.1.2	<i>ch’as</i> “only”	101
7.3.1.3	<i>ch’u</i> “even”	101
7.3.1.4	<i>yéi</i> “thus”	101
7.3.1.5	<i>tláx</i> “very”	101
7.3.1.6	<i>ch’u tlei</i> “while”	101

7.3.1.7	<i>ch'u tleix</i> “forever”	101
7.3.1.8	<i>ch'u déix</i> “both”	101
7.3.1.9	<i>ch'u shóogu</i> “the same”	101
7.3.1.10	<i>ch'a ldakát</i> “all”	101
7.3.1.11	<i>ch'a tlákw</i> “always”	101
7.3.1.12	<i>ch'a yóok'</i> “suddenly”	101
7.3.1.13	<i>ch'a g̃óot</i> “other”	101
7.3.1.14	<i>ch'a yéi</i> “usual”	101
7.3.2	Postphrasal particles	102
7.3.2.1	<i>tsá</i> “only then”	102
7.3.2.2	<i>tsú</i> “also”	102
7.3.2.3	<i>s'é</i> “first”	102
7.3.2.4	<i>déi</i> “now”	102
7.3.2.5	<i>x'wan</i> “be sure to”	102
7.3.2.6	<i>tsé</i> “be sure not to”	102
7.3.3	Mobile particles	103
7.3.3.1	<i>tléi</i> “just”	103
7.3.3.2	<i>déi</i> “already”	103
7.3.3.3	<i>tsu</i> “again”	103
Chapter 8. Verb structure		104
8.1	Macrostructure of the verb	104
8.1.1	Disjunct domain	108
8.1.2	Conjunct domain	108
8.1.3	Suffix domain	108
8.1.4	Leer's “Principle of Templatic Attraction”	108
8.1.5	Comparison with Athabaskan and Eyak	108
8.2	Lexical specification: The verb theme	110
8.2.1	Structure of the theme	110
8.2.1.1	Obligatory elements	113
8.2.1.2	Optional elements	113
8.2.2	Lexical specification beyond the verb	113
8.2.2.1	Direct arguments	113
8.2.2.2	Local arguments	113
8.2.2.3	Focused arguments	113
8.2.3	Comparison with Athabaskan and Eyak verb themes	113
8.2.4	Verb word formation	113
8.2.4.1	Kari's cyclic model for Athabaskan	113

	8.2.4.2	A Tlingit tiered model	113
8.3		The root	114
	8.3.1	Root meanings and glosses	114
	8.3.2	Root variation and apophony	118
		8.3.2.1 Closed root variation	118
		8.3.2.2 Open root variation	118
	8.3.3	Invariable and disyllabic roots	118
	8.3.4	Root suppletion	118
		8.3.4.1 Plural suppletion	118
		8.3.4.2 Classificatory suppletion	118
	8.3.5	Irregular roots	118
	8.3.6	Root polysemy	118
	8.3.7	Root tuples	118
8.4		Prefixes and proclitics	119
	8.4.1	Classifier (+1)	119
		8.4.1.1 D component	120
		8.4.1.2 S component	121
		8.4.1.3 I component	121
		8.4.1.4 Comparison with Athabaskan and Eyak	122
	8.4.2	Prefix coalescence from +1 to +14	124
	8.4.3	Subject: (+2)	129
		8.4.3.1 First person singular <i>xa-</i>	129
		8.4.3.2 First person plural <i>tu-</i>	129
		8.4.3.3 Second person singular <i>ee-</i>	129
		8.4.3.4 Second person plural <i>yi-</i>	129
		8.4.3.5 Third person \emptyset -	129
		8.4.3.6 Third person obviate <i>du-</i>	129
		8.4.3.7 Indefinite human <i>du-</i>	129
	8.4.4	Distributive <i>daḡa-</i> ~ <i>dax-</i> (+3)	129
		8.4.4.1 Scope over entities	129
		8.4.4.2 Subjecthood and objecthood	129
		8.4.4.3 Scope over events	129
		8.4.4.4 Relationship with +16 distributive	129
	8.4.5	Perfective <i>yū-</i> (+4)	130
		8.4.5.1 Comparison with Athabaskan <i>s</i> -perfective	130
	8.4.6	Inner aspect/conjugation (+5)	130
		8.4.6.1 <i>Ga</i> -conjugation/aspect	130
		8.4.6.2 <i>Na</i> -conjugation/aspect	130

	8.4.6.3	\emptyset -conjugation/aspect	130
8.4.7		Irrealis <i>u-</i> (+6)	130
	8.4.7.1	Comparison with Athabaskan <i>w</i> -negative	130
8.4.8		Outer aspect/conjugation (+7)	130
	8.4.8.1	Modal $\bar{g}a-$	130
	8.4.8.2	<i>Ga</i> -conjugation/aspect	130
8.4.9		Self-benefactive <i>ga-</i> (+8)	130
8.4.10		Horizontal surface <i>ka-</i> (+9)	130
	8.4.10.1	Classificatory use	130
8.4.11		Vertical surface $\bar{y}a-$ (+10)	130
	8.4.11.1	Classificatory use	130
8.4.12		Inalienable incorporates (+11)	131
	8.4.12.1	Relational nouns	131
	8.4.12.2	Body parts	131
8.4.13		Alienable incorporates (+12)	134
	8.4.13.1	Cry $\bar{g}a\bar{x}-$	134
	8.4.13.2	Thirst <i>shakux-</i>	135
	8.4.13.3	Breath $\bar{x}'asakw-$	135
	8.4.13.4	Hunger <i>yaan-</i>	135
	8.4.13.5	Sleep <i>yata-</i>	135
	8.4.13.6	Missing <i>taa-</i>	135
	8.4.13.7	News <i>kaneek-</i>	136
	8.4.13.8	Noise <i>kayik-</i>	136
	8.4.13.9	Reproach <i>yaká-</i>	136
	8.4.13.10	Dusk <i>xee-</i> ~ <i>xei-</i>	136
	8.4.13.11	Dawn <i>kee-</i> ~ <i>kei-</i>	136
	8.4.13.12	Time <i>yee-</i> ~ <i>yei-</i>	136
	8.4.13.13	Land <i>aan-</i>	136
	8.4.13.14	Water <i>hín-</i>	136
	8.4.13.15	People <i>naa-</i>	136
	8.4.13.16	Name <i>saa-</i>	136
	8.4.13.17	Canoe <i>yaakw-</i>	136
	8.4.13.18	Bundle <i>sha.aaxw-</i>	136
8.4.14		Areal <i>ku-</i> (+13)	137
	8.4.14.1	Types of areals	137
	8.4.14.2	Status as incorporated noun	137
	8.4.14.3	Status as object	137
	8.4.14.4	Comparisons with Athabaskan and Eyak	137

8.4.15	Object (+14)	138
8.4.15.1	Objects and incorporated nouns	138
8.4.15.2	First person singular <i>xát-</i>	138
8.4.15.3	First person plural <i>haa-</i>	138
8.4.15.4	Second person singular <i>i-</i>	138
8.4.15.5	Second person plural <i>yee-</i>	138
8.4.15.6	Third person <i>θ- ~ a-</i>	138
8.4.15.7	Third person proximate <i>ash-</i>	138
8.4.15.8	Indefinite human <i>kaa- ~ ku-</i>	138
8.4.15.9	Indefinite nonhuman <i>at-</i>	138
8.4.15.10	Partitive <i>aa-</i>	138
8.4.15.11	Reflexive <i>sh-</i>	138
8.4.15.12	Plural number <i>has- ~ s- (+15)</i>	139
8.4.16	Reciprocal and distributive (+16)	140
8.4.16.1	Reciprocal <i>woosh-</i>	140
8.4.16.2	Distributive <i>dax-</i>	140
8.4.17	Preverbs (+17)	140
8.4.17.1	Group A	143
8.4.17.2	Group B	143
8.4.17.3	Group C	144
8.4.17.4	Group D	145
8.4.17.5	Group E1	147
8.4.17.6	Group E2	150
8.4.17.7	Group F	154
8.5	Suffixes	156
8.5.1	Derivational (-1)	156
8.5.1.1	Amissive <i>-xaa</i>	157
8.5.1.2	Restorative <i>-án</i>	161
8.5.1.3	Simulative <i>-aa</i>	163
8.5.1.4	Coplural <i>-k</i>	163
8.5.1.5	Intensive <i>-shan ~ -ch'an</i>	163
8.5.1.6	Deprivative <i>-(y)akw</i>	165
8.5.1.7	Denominal <i>-yi</i>	166
8.5.1.8	Liabilitive <i>-ee</i>	166
8.5.1.9	Unknown <i>-k(w)</i>	166
8.5.1.10	Unknown <i>-al' ~ -ch'al'</i>	166
8.5.1.11	Unknown <i>-ch'</i>	166
8.5.1.12	Unknown <i>-ákw</i>	167

8.5.1.13	Unknown <i>-nas</i> and <i>-nás'</i>	167
8.5.1.14	Unknown <i>-át'</i>	167
8.5.2	Durational (-2)	168
8.5.2.1	Frequentive <i>-ch</i>	168
8.5.2.2	Repetitive <i>-k(w)</i>	168
8.5.2.3	Habitual <i>-x</i>	168
8.5.2.4	Consecutive	169
8.5.2.5	Serial <i>-s'</i>	169
8.5.2.6	Unknown <i>-l'</i>	170
8.5.2.7	Plural object <i>-x'</i>	170
8.5.2.8	Plural object <i>-t'</i>	173
8.5.3	Root variation (-3)	174
8.5.3.1	Synchronic systems of variation	174
8.5.3.2	Pre-Tlingit aspectual suffixes	174
8.5.4	Inner mode (-4)	175
8.5.4.1	Contingent <i>-in</i> ~ <i>-un</i>	175
8.5.4.2	Conditional <i>-ni</i>	175
8.5.5	Outer mode (-5)	175
8.5.5.1	Decessive <i>-een</i>	175
8.5.5.2	Optative <i>-(ee)k</i>	176
8.5.5.3	Attributive <i>-yi</i>	176
8.5.5.4	Subordinate <i>-yi'</i>	176
8.5.6	Postverbs (-6)	176
8.5.6.1	Frequentative = <i>nooch</i> ~ = <i>neech</i> ~ = <i>nukch</i>	176
8.5.6.2	Frequenative decessive = <i>noojeen</i> ~ = <i>neejeen</i>	177
8.5.6.3	Repetitive = <i>nóok</i> ~ = <i>néekw</i>	177
8.5.6.4	Conditional = <i>núgwni</i> ~ = <i>nígwni</i>	177
8.5.6.5	Contingent = <i>ḡanúgun</i> ~ = <i>ḡaníkḡ</i> ~ = <i>ḡanígún</i>	177
Chapter 9. Verb function		178
9.1	Tense-mood-aspect system	178
9.1.1	Declarative	178
9.1.1.1	Non-habitual	178
9.1.1.2	Habitual	179
9.1.2	Deontic	179
9.1.3	Circumstantial	180
9.2	Dependent clauses	180
9.2.1	Attributive	180

9.2.2	Subordinative	180
9.2.2.1	Adjunct	180
9.2.2.2	Complement	180
9.2.3	Gerundive	180
9.3	Transitivity	181
9.3.1	Active system	181
9.3.1.1	Unergativity and “intransitive”	181
9.3.1.2	Unaccusativity and “stative/objective”	181
9.3.2	Transitivization	181
9.3.3	Causativization	181
9.3.4	Detransitivization	181
9.4	Incorporation	181
9.5	Lexical classes	181
9.5.1	Non-motion	181
9.5.1.1	Stative	181
9.5.1.2	Processive	181
9.5.1.3	Eventive	182
9.5.2	Motion	182
9.5.2.1	Telic	182
9.5.2.2	Atelic	182
9.5.2.3	Incorporated nominals	182
9.5.2.4	Extensional imperfectives	182
9.5.2.5	Dimensional and extensional imperfectives	182
9.5.2.6	Positional imperfectives	182
9.6	Classificatory verbs and noun classes	183
9.6.1	General object (GEN)	188
9.6.2	Small round object (SRO)	188
9.6.3	Object with parts (OWP)	188
9.6.4	Round framelike object (RFO)	188
9.6.5	Slender stiff object (SSO)	188
9.6.6	Small slender stiff object (SSS)	188
9.6.7	Uncoiled flexible object (UFO)	188
9.6.8	Coiled flexible object (CFO)	188
9.6.9	Flat flexible object (FFO)	188
9.6.10	Bundled flexible objects (BFO)	188
9.6.11	Filled container (FC)	188
9.6.12	Empty container (EC)	188
9.6.13	Animate holdable object (AHO)	188

9.6.14	Dead weight object (DWO)	188
9.6.15	Plural objects (PLO)	188
9.6.16	Other classes with defective paradigms	188
Chapter 10.	Syntax	189
10.1	Word order	189
10.2	Transitivity	191
10.2.1	Causatives	191
10.2.2	Pseudopassives	191
10.3	Sentence types	191
10.3.1	Commands	191
10.3.2	Propositions	191
10.3.3	Requests	191
10.3.4	Declarations	191
10.3.5	Exclamations	191
10.3.6	Desideratives	191
10.3.7	Formulae	191
10.4	Focus	192
10.4.1	Focusing	192
10.4.2	Multiple foci	192
10.4.3	Extraposition	192
10.5	Topic	192
10.5.1	Topicality	192
10.5.2	Address	192
10.5.3	Interjections	192
10.6	Pronouns and anaphora	192
10.6.1	Pronouns	192
10.6.1.1	Differences between pronouns and pronominals	192
10.6.1.2	Personal pronouns	192
10.6.1.3	Discourse pronouns	192
10.6.1.4	Indefinite pronouns	192
10.6.1.5	Reflexives	192
10.6.1.6	Reciprocals	192
10.6.2	Antecedents	192
10.6.3	Locatives	192
10.6.4	Intersentential anaphora	192
10.7	Relativization	193

10.7.1	Subject relativization	193
10.7.2	Object relativization	193
10.8	Phrase structure	193
10.8.1	Noun phrases	193
10.8.2	Verb phrases	193
10.8.3	Postpositional phrases	193
10.9	Conjunction and coordination	193
10.10	Ellipsis	193
Chapter 11.	Discourse phenomena	194
11.1	Code-switching	194
11.2	Reference tracking	197
11.3	Point of view	197
11.4	Functions of relatives	197
11.5	Tense/aspect/mood in narratives	197
11.6	Topic shift	197
11.7	Word order	197
11.8	Ellipsis	197
Chapter 12.	Language contact	198
12.1	Russian	198
12.2	Chinook Jargon	198
12.3	English	198
12.4	Effects on other languages	198
12.4.1	English	198
12.4.2	Kaska	198
Chapter 13.	Genealogy	200
13.1	Pre-Tlingit	200
13.2	Leer's endohybrid hypothesis	200
13.3	Proto-Na-Dene	200
13.4	Dene-Yeniseic hypothesis	200
Appendices		202
Appendix A.	Sample texts	203
A.1	Other sources for written Tlingit	203
A.1.1	Published works	203

A.1.2	Unpublished sources	203
A.2	Other sources for spoken Tlingit	203
A.3	Conversational text	203
A.4	Oral history text	203
Appendix B.	Dictionary	204
B.1	Verb themes	204
B.2	Nouns	204
B.3	Others	204
Appendix C.	Phoneme illustrations	205
C.1	Consonants	205
C.2	Vowels	208
Appendix D.	Verb paradigms	209
D.1	S cook O <i>O-S-CL[-D, s]-?ee</i>	210
D.2	S eat O <i>O-S-CL[-D, s]-xaa</i>	210
Appendix E.	Abbreviations	218
Appendix F.	Symbols	221
Appendix G.	Glossary	225
	Citation Abbreviations	226
	Bibliography	227
	Names index	233
	Languages index	236
	Topical index	237

List of tables

1.1	Tlingit numerals collected by de Lamnaon and La Pérouse	21
3.1	Tlingit consonants in IPA	42
3.2	Northern Tlingit vowels in IPA	49
3.3	Tone correspondences between Tlingit dialects	50
4.1	Forms of the possessive suffix <i>-yí</i>	68
4.2	Postpositions and case suffixes	70
4.3	Pronouns and pronominals	76
7.1	Focusing particles	97
7.2	Sentence-initial evidential particles	99
7.3	Prephrasal particles	100
7.4	Postphrasal particles	102
7.5	Mobile particles	103
8.1	Tlingit verb template	105
8.2	Tlingit verb affixes	106
8.3	Generalized Athabaskan verb template	109
8.4	Tlingit classifier system	119
8.5	Prior Proto-Athabaskan classifier system	123
8.6	Current Proto-Athabaskan classifier system	123
8.7	Eyak classifier system	123
8.8	Proto-Na-Dene classifier system	123
8.9	Classifier shapes	126
8.10	Coalescence of perfective <i>yü-</i>	126
8.11	Coalescence of future <i>ga-ǔ-g̃a-</i>	127
8.12	Coalescence with \emptyset -conjugation/aspect	128
8.13	Inalienable incorporated nouns (+11)	132

8.14	Alienable incorporated nouns (+12)	134
8.15	Adverbial proclitics (+17)	141
8.16	Variant forms of the group E1 preverbs	147
8.17	Derivational suffixes (-1)	156
8.18	Verb roots with amissive <i>-xaa</i> .	157
8.19	Verb roots with restorative <i>-án</i> .	161
8.20	Verb roots with unknown <i>-k ~ -kw</i> .	166
8.21	Verb roots with unknown <i>-ál' ~ -ch'ál'</i> .	166
8.22	Verb roots with unknown <i>-ch'</i> .	166
8.23	Verb roots with unknown <i>-ákw</i> .	167
8.24	Verb roots with unknown <i>-nas</i> .	167
8.25	Verb roots with unknown <i>-nás'</i> .	167
8.26	Verb roots with unknown <i>-át'</i> .	167
9.1	Noun classes in Navajo	183
9.2	Dëne Sų́liné (Chipewyan) noun classes	183
9.3	Tlingit noun classes	184
9.4	Verbs of handling for noun classes	185
9.5	Verbs of throwing for noun classes	186
9.6	Verbs of finding for noun classes	187
12.1	Tlingit loanwords in Kaska	199
C.2	Words illustrating Tlingit consonants	207
C.3	Vowels in closed and open syllables.	208
C.4	Front unrounded and back rounded vowels in comparison.	208
D.1	Imperfective paradigm of “S cook 3rd O”	211
D.2	Imperfective decessive paradigm of “S cook 3rd O”	212
D.3	Perfective paradigm of “S cook 3rd O”	213
D.4	Perfective habitual paradigm of “S cook 3rd O”	214
D.5	Future paradigm of “S cook 3rd O”	215
D.6	Miscellaneous paradigms of “S cook 3rd O”	216
D.7	Potential paradigms of “S cook 3rd O”	216
D.8	Imperfective paradigm of “S eat 3rd O”	217
F.1	List of grammaticality and phonemicity symbols	222

List of figures

4.1	Noun possession classes	67
13.1	Na-Dene genealogical relationships	201

1. *Introduction*

This work is a descriptive reference grammar of the Tlingit language. It is intended for a linguistically knowledgeable audience, but assumes no particular theoretical framework for linguistic analysis. Rather than write for a narrow audience, I attempt to define all terminology which is not widely in use among descriptive linguists, particularly those terms and concepts which are unique to Athabaskanists.

I have chosen to first write a technical grammar rather than a pedagogical one because I feel that although the audience might be more limited, the result is more thorough and detailed than a pedagogical grammar could be. I do not mean to neglect the urgent need for pedagogy, but in my experience any teaching materials developed without basis in linguistic analysis end up being confusing, incomplete, and even misleading. Thus I intend for this grammar to serve as a solid foundation for later development of teaching materials which can serve the language revitalization community.

I do not offer here a normative prescription of how Tlingit *should be* spoken, but rather a record of how Tlingit *is* spoken. There are certainly many facets of the language which I have not addressed. I have attempted to be as comprehensive as possible in my description of the variation among Tlingit speakers, both currently and in the past, but I nonetheless have probably missed some kinds of variation that occur in the native speaker population. Thus it should not be assumed that if I have not documented something in this grammar then the phenomenon is not proper Tlingit. Where I have encountered a phenomenon which is not found among any Tlingit speakers, I take some pains to point the phenomenon out, and I show by means of elicited or otherwise documented examples how the phenomenon is excluded. Only in these particular cases can the reader assume that something is absolutely not allowed in the language.

I have endeavored to describe the language as it is spoken naturally, and as such the majority of my examples come from published sources or from narrative recordings which were not intended primarily for analytic use. This has

forced me to address a number of grammatical phenomena which are of questionable status, simply because they occur at least once in my sources. As such, there are quite a few problems in this grammar that remain unsolved, and which will probably continue to remain unsolved as dialects disappear and the native speaker population dwindles. Rather than sweep these issues under some analytical rug I have laid them out for others to consider, but they must be approached with the understanding that they may not be any more grammatical than some garden variety speech error in a better studied language.

My emphasis on naturally occurring language does not exclude the use of elicited forms, despite some claims in the language documentation literature that elicitation is unnecessary. In any language there are phenomena which occur so rarely that even a very large corpus will not feature more than one or two occurrences, and the corpus for Tlingit is rather small. In addition, lack of evidence does not constitute negative evidence, so for determining what is ungrammatical I find elicitation to be absolutely necessary. Where examples do not include a citation it can be assumed that I have elicited the form from at least one highly reliable native speaker, and usually from several.

My translations of Tlingit into English are often rather unidiomatic in English. I have done this on purpose, in order to make clear the structure of the Tlingit examples, rather than give more natural English forms. In many cases there are prior translations, but because most such translations were done for literary rather than linguistic use, they are not “honest” enough for my purposes. The reader should seek out the original sources for more idiomatic and literary translations of the Tlingit texts. My translations are not intended to cast Tlingit speakers as uneducated or confused; in fact, the majority of Tlingit speakers I quote are equally fluent and eloquent in English, and would probably find my overly literal translations to be clumsy and awkward, though certainly accurate.

Throughout this grammar I focus on the Northern dialect of Tlingit. There are three other major dialects, Southern, Transitional, and Tongass, but the last is extinct and the former two are nearly so. Northern Tlingit is thus the majority, and is the dialect of the modern literary tradition. I do include data on the non-Northern dialects and discuss them in the context of their contribution to understanding the language, but most of the data presented in this grammar is taken from Northern speakers. I thus treat Northern as the “unmarked” form of the language, although this may not be historically accurate. The internal dialectal structure of the Northern dialect is complex, see §3.5 for details.

Although I am a member of the Tlingit nation, being of the *Kakáak’w*

Hít (*ka-kák-w-k' hit* |HSFC-basket/arch-DIM house|,¹ “Basket/Arch House”) of the *Deisheetaan* (*dei-shú-hít-taan* |trail-end-house-group|, “Beaver”, see §4.15.2) clan, and of the *Shtax'héen* (*sh-táx'-héen* |RFLX-bite-river|, “Stikine”, see §4.15.4.3) *Kwáan*, I am not a native speaker of the Tlingit language. Indeed, my desire to learn the language is what drove me to study linguistics and write this grammar. The last Tlingit speaker in my family was my great grandmother, Margaret Bakke (née Gunyah), who died while her daughters were young and hence did not pass on her language. She was from *Klawock* (*Lawaak*, see §4.15.4.3) and thus spoke the *Henry* subdialect of the Southern Tlingit dialect (see §3.5.3). Her Tlingit name² is lost to memory, but her daughter, my grandmother, was given the name of her mother Emma Dick: *Oonyeik*. This name may derive from *xoon yéigi* (*xoon yéik-yí* |north.wind spirit-pss|). My Tlingit name is *Dzéiwsh*, which is apparently a Tlingit approximation of the English name “James”, and it was held last by my distant uncle Evans Gunyah. I also hold another name, *Gaanyaa*, given to me by Theodore Roberts [name] of the *Gaanax'ádi* (*ḡaanáx-át-yí* |Gaanáx-thing-pss|, “People of Gaanáx”) in *Klawock*. Because this name does not belong to my clan I do not normally use it, but instead hold it in safe keeping until such time as a *Gaanax'ádi* man is appointed to carry it. The astute reader will notice a similarity to the surname “Gunyah”, and indeed that derives from the last man to hold the name *Gaanyaa* before me, Chief George Gunyah. He was the *hít s'aatí* (*hít s'aat-yí* |house master-pss| “house master”) of *Yan Wuli-háshi Hít* (*yán=θ-yu-li-hásh-yí hit* |TERM=3O-PFV-CL[-D, l, +I]-drift-ATTR house|, “(Whale) Drifted Ashore House”), a *Gaanax'ádi* house in *T'akjik'aan* ([T'akjik]-aan |T'akjik-village|, “Tuxekan”), and also happened to be my great great grandfather.

1.1. The name

The name “Tlingit” is pronounced in English by most Tlingit people as /'klɪŋ.kʰɪt/, approximated by the English sequence “cling-kit”. An alternative sometimes heard is /'klɪŋ.ɪt/ approximated by “cling-it”, but this is less common. Pronunciations like */tə'klɪŋ.gɪt/ are unknown and incorrect, although such forms appear in several English dictionaries presumably due to the capricious inventiveness of lexicographers. The name is spelt ⟨Tlingit⟩ due to an obscure accident of his-

1. This is the conventional morphological analysis, but Jeff Leer has noted that the unusual form hints at the existence of an older morphology and meaning now lost.
2. For more on personal names see §4.15.1

tory which I will outline in this section, but the reason for its use is still not exactly clear.

The Tlingit word *lingít* /ɬinkít/ means “person, people”, but is associated in Tlingit culture with the Tlingit themselves in contrast to other ethnicities such as the Haida (*Deikeenaa* /te:kʰi:na:/), Tsimshian (*Ts’ootsxán* /ts’u:tsxán/), Athabaskan (*Ḡunanaa* /qunana:/), and so forth. When used as an ethnic referent rather than as a basic noun, the usual orthographic practice is to capitalize it as ⟨Lingít⟩, so that ⟨lingít⟩ only refers to the common noun. This name is also used to refer to the Tlingit language in the phrase *Lingít Yoo X’atángi* /ɬinkít ju:χ’atánki/ “Tlingit language”.³

In the early exploration of the Northwest Coast, Europeans encountered many languages with lateral fricatives and affricates like [ɬ] and [tɬ], the presence of which is an areal linguistic feature in the region. Such sounds pervaded the trade jargon used for interethnic communication between various European and indigenous groups, the famous Chinook Jargon. In attempting to capture this sound, English and French speakers would typically use the cluster [kl] which occurs in both languages. As a consequence, the lateral fricatives and affricates in the region were usually written as ⟨cl⟩ or ⟨kl⟩, and a survey of placenames in the Pacific Northwest will turn up numerous examples. In some words however the form ⟨tl⟩ is found instead, as in for example the Chinook Jargon words *pátəč* /pa.ɬəʃ/ “give” and *pət* /pəʃ/ “full” which were often written as ⟨potlatch⟩ and ⟨patl⟩. Some writers developed a consistent habit of word initial ⟨kl⟩ and word medial or word final ⟨tl⟩, all representing lateral affricates and fricatives.

It thus appears that the written form ⟨Tlingit⟩ uses the digraph ⟨tl⟩ in an attempt to capture the initial lateral fricative in /ɬinkít/. The typical use of ⟨tl⟩ was however word-*medially* or word-*finally* rather than word-initially, so the reason why initial ⟨tl⟩ was used is still perplexing. I have not investigated the historical record for the first use of something like ⟨Tlingit⟩, so I am unaware of who deserves credit for this form.

As well as the myriad orthographic variations like ⟨Tlinkit⟩, ⟨Tlingkit⟩, and ⟨Klinkit⟩, the Tlingit people and their language are also known under a few other names. The most important of these alternate names is the Russian *Коллюж* /ko'lʲuz/ or *Коллюш* /ko'lʲuʃ/, often found in the plural with final *-u* or *-i* /i/. An-

3. Morphologically this is: lingít yoo=θ-x’a-θ-θ-tán-k-θ-ŷí
 Tlingit ALT=3O-mouth-ZCNJ-3S-Cl[-D, θ, -I]-carry-REP-NMZ-PSS
 “Tlingit speech”

other frequent variation is *Колоу* /ko'loʃ/, and this occurs in the German *Kolosch* and *Koloschische*. Emmons (1991:7) relates Veniaminov's derivation of the term from an Aleut (or perhaps Alutiiq?) *kaluga* which referred to a wooden dish, and by association referred to the labret which was worn in the lower lip by Tlingit women of high status. This word somehow obtained the Russian diminutive form *колюшка* /ko'l'uʃka/, which then evolved into the other forms mentioned previously.

1.2. Organization of the grammar

This grammar is organized in a relatively linear manner from the most basic units of language to the most complex, namely from sounds to discourse. Bracketing this main body are two chapters, one providing a basic ethnographic sketch and the other providing a basic comparative-historical (“genealogical”) sketch. The earlier chapters are mostly concerned with structure: sounds, nouns, adjectives, particles, adverbs, verb structure. The later chapters are more concerned with function: verb function, syntax, discourse. It is obvious that no strict line can be drawn between structure and function, and in fact the two are intermingled somewhat in every chapter. Nevertheless, the overall organization of each chapter reflects my attempt to organize it around a primary concern.

1.2.1. Citations

Throughout this grammar I refer very frequently to a number of Tlingit sources both for examples and for previous research. Because of the high frequency of these citations and because some sources have a number of authors or editors, the use of full citations is spatially inefficient and distracting. Instead I use abbreviations for the most frequently cited sources, e.g. A69, B17, NS73, WWL78, L91, LHR01. A complete list of citation abbreviations is given in appendix G on page 226.

In order to maintain consistency throughout this book, I have transformed all Tlingit text from its original orthography or transcription into my own except where maintaining the original form is important. The major transcription systems and orthographies are discussed in §3.8 on page 59. As well as transforming prior written forms of the language, I have also returned to some recordings on which previous works were based. Since all prior transcriptions which were reviewed by a native speaker can be presumed to be grammatical

and hence valid data for most analytic purposes, I am occasionally faced with a quandary: whether to use my own transcription which may be more accurate or use the sanitized published forms which may perversely be more “natural” through the exclusion of mistakes, infelicities, etc. My decision has been one of convenience, in that I use whichever source either illustrates a point or otherwise happens to be more convenient for my purposes. When using data from a recording that was previously transcribed and published, I will include a citation for the published material as well as for the recording. Examples which only cite written materials are implicitly from the published version and not from my own retranscriptions.

1.2.2. Transcription conventions

Throughout much of this grammar I have adopted a slightly modified form of the Revised Popular orthography which has been used for Tlingit since the 1970s, particularly throughout the publications from Richard and Nora Dauenhauer. The modifications which I have made to the orthography are the change of ⟨g⟩ to the somewhat easier to read ⟨ḡ⟩, and the addition of ⟨ÿ⟩ as both a linguistic symbol accounting for alternation between /j/ and /w/ and a grapheme representing /w/ for those speakers who have this phoneme (see §3.1.5.4).

I have used the IPA for the representation of both Tlingit phonemes and phonetic segments in the chapter on sounds (chapter 3), as well as in other places where I need to distinguish between sound and writing. Although it is generally the custom for works on North American indigenous languages to use some variation of the Americanist transcription tradition, I have abandoned this because I feel that the use of Americanist transcription alienates a large audience.

The use of IPA means that my transcriptions reflect theoretical phonetic universals rather than phonological facts of the Tlingit language, a mismatch which can be somewhat clumsy. An example of this dichotomy is that in the IPA there is a symbolic distinction between stops and affricates, where stops are monographic but affricates are digraphic, reflecting the phonetic fact that affricates are composed of a sequence of stop and fricative. Many linguists have pointed out that languages often distinguish between affricates and stop+fricative sequences, as indeed occurs in Tlingit: /at.ʃí/ “song” vs. /a.tʃín/ “its hand, paw”. The Americanist transcription tradition might instead use /adší/ vs. /ažín/ or /aǰín/, with monographs for the affricates making the distinction clear. Despite the possible advantages of the Americanist tradition, I have decided that IPA is

more widely recognized and is better standardized, and with it I can address as wide an audience as possible.

1.2.3. Glossing

Glossing Tlingit is a challenging job for any linguist. The verb in particular has an overwhelming number of morphophonological changes which obscure underlying morphemes.⁴ In addition, the wide variety of morphemes and the often semantically abstract meanings associated with them make for difficult interpretation. The resulting glosses are quite long and often do not fit well on a single line. I have taken some pains to ensure that every single example is as fully glossed as possible, even if it is not warranted by the example's purpose. In this respect I hope that every example is useful for more than one specific job, and I expect that interested linguists will find in the examples a wealth of phenomena which I have neglected or not thoroughly treated.

There are two exceptions to my practice of abundant glosses: names and certain kinds of nouns. Names are often left unglossed, as something like NAME, PLACE, or the like. This is because the underlying morphophonology of names is sometimes quite complicated, and usually irrelevant to the example. Check the name index in appendix G on page 232 for the primary reference of a name which will include its morphological structure. Also see §4.15 on page 82 for the general morphosyntactic properties of names in Tlingit, as well as a variety of personal names, clan names, *k̄wáan* names, ethnonyms, and placenames.

Some nouns, particularly those which derive from verb forms, have an unwieldy length when fully glossed. An example is *kugás'* "fog" which is underlyingly *k̄u-θ-gás'-θ* |AREAL-CL[-D, θ, -I]-be.foggy-NMZ|. In most cases this level of detail would not be illuminating and would increase the size of the example needlessly. To compensate for this I have included a short dictionary which includes entries for all Tlingit words that appear in this grammar. The interested reader can thus refer to this dictionary in appendix B on page 204 for further explication.

Verb roots are particularly hard to gloss given that a single root can have a wide range of meanings, none of which may be succinctly expressible in English. For the various problems in glossing and determining the meaning of verb roots, see §8.3.1 on page 114.

4. This complexity in fact calls into question the actual existence of the underlying morphemes, an issue which I discuss further in chapter 8.

A list of gloss abbreviations and other acronyms and abbreviations is given in appendix E on page 218. That list is comprehensive, containing every single abbreviation which occurs throughout the grammar.

Where the Tlingit names of living entities occur, I have taken some pains to determine the exact species or at least genus and include the current scientific names alongside the English names used locally. The scientific names are current as of the time of writing, but certain areas of biological nomenclature change rapidly and cannot be expected to remain constant. For this reason I have included the standard nomenclature authority abbreviations, thus allowing interested readers to verify the scientific names and determine if they have changed since publication.

All glosses and translations which appear in this work are my own except where indicated. Thus my glosses may often differ from those in previous publications. In some cases this is merely due to different names and abbreviations for the same structures, however there are many areas where my analysis is innovative and hence will not match previous descriptions. Since all sources of data are cited explicitly throughout this work, the curious reader should find it relatively easy to investigate some example further in other works.

1.2.4. Personal names

In this grammar I avoid using traditional Tlingit personal names except where they appear in literary or quoted contexts. This is because names are a form of *at.óowu*, literally “something owned”, which is to say that they are a type of clan property which is loosely comparable to valuable family heirlooms in the European cultures (see also §2.2). Names have inherent and ascribed value, and as with other clan heirlooms, are assigned to individuals who fill the role of the name’s caretaker as well as the name’s living referent. Names gain or lose value by the actions of their caretaker, and when the caretaker dies the name may be assigned to a new individual in the clan. Since disputes over *at.óowu* can be acrimonious and may give rise to insult and conflict, I avoid using them out of context. In place of traditional names I use invented names which are either plausible forms based on Tlingit naming practices but are somewhat unlikely as *at.óowu*, or which are phonologically adapted from familiar English names. The choice between the two is somewhat arbitrary in any given instance, but I tend to select English-derived names when the underlying morphology of an invented Tlingit name would be distracting. For my analysis of various types of Tlingit names, see §4.15 on page 82.

1.3. Typological summary

This section offers a summary of issues that I feel are typologically interesting about the language. Of course, in my opinion everything about the language is interesting, but most other linguists probably do not share my penchant for the language. I offer this section with the assumption that typologists, theoreticians, and others interested in crosslinguistic phenomena can use this summary to get a feel for the major features of the language without having to read through the entire grammar. Each linguistic phenomenon discussed here includes a reference to the section where it is discussed in detail.

1.3.1. Sounds

Tlingit has a large consonant inventory, with between 44 and 48 consonants depending on dialect and in some cases idiolect (§3.1). There is a three-way distinction in stops and affricates between plain, aspirated, and ejective, and in fricatives there is a two-way distinction between plain and ejective except for the lack of */f'/ (§3.1.2).⁵ Tlingit has four unique consonants, the ejective fricatives /x'/, /x'^w/, /χ'/, and /χ'^w/ (§3.1.4). In most dialects of Tlingit there is only one nasal /n/, which is also the sole voiced obstruent, however certain Interior Tlingit dialects have /m/ as well. Dialects lacking /m/ thus lack labial consonants, given that /w/ is not a labial but is instead a rounded counterpart of /ɥ/. The latter velar approximant /ɥ/ is now essentially extinct, having split and merged into /j/ or /w/ depending on rounding context, but /ɥ/ is recorded in speech as late as the 1970s and 1980s among some elderly speakers of certain dialects (§3.1.5.4). Tlingit has a large inventory of lateral sounds, both affricates and fricatives, but lacks the voiced lateral */l/.⁶ There are rounded glottals /ʔ^w/ and /h^w/ which are phonemic for some speakers but not for others; it is possible that rounded glottals were once more common but are being lost as with /ɥ/.

Vowels in Tlingit are relatively simple. All dialects have a four vowel system with /i/, /e/, /a/, and /u/, and all dialects have a distinction between long and short vowels. In the Carcross and Teslin communilects the short vowel /a/ merges with /e/ for most speakers, but the distinction is maintained in the long vowels. Tlingit dialects have various tone systems, with the majority form in Northern Tlingit having a two-way distinction between unmarked low tone and marked high tone, both of which are level. Southern Tlingit has a three-way

5. Forms given in slashes are transcribed in IPA.

6. Oddly, [l] occurs universally for /n/ with one recorded speaker. See §3.1.5.3 on page 45.

tone system of low, high, and falling tones, with the falling tone having a contour that runs downward from the high tone to the low tone. Tongass Tlingit had a four-way nontonal system of syllable nuclei which were short, long, glottalized, and “fading” (falling pitch and breathy). The two-way tone system of Northern Tlingit may be evolving into a pitch accent system.

Syllable structure in Tlingit is relatively complex, but not as elaborate as found in other languages of the Pacific Northwest of North America. The basic syllables are CV and CVC, however the full pattern is $(C_0)C_1V(C_2(C_3))$. C_1 is obligatory, and syllables with no onset have a prothetic /ʔ/ prepended. C_0 can be a fricative as in /sk^húq/ “coughing, cold”, an affricate as in /tʃ^hχánk/ “grandchild (affectionate)”, or a stop as in /k^wfé/ “maybe, perhaps”. Onsets with two stops occur, e.g. /k^wq^{hw}aku:t/ “I will go”.

In the coda both /ʔ/ and /h/ are prohibited, as well as their rounded counterparts. Aspiration does not occur in the coda although release still occurs even word-medially; linguists have often perceived this as aspiration, as pointed out by Maddieson, Smith, & Bessell (2001). In all orthographies and in most transcriptions these released unaspirated stops and affricates in the coda are represented using aspirated graphemes. Approximants such as /j/ and /w/ can occur in the coda, leading to misperception of diphthongs which are actually vowel-approximant sequences; diphthongs do not occur.

In addition to the vowel-nucleus syllable described previously, there is also a relatively infrequent syllable F which consists of a lone plain (i.e. nonejective) fricative which can be /s/, /ʃ/, or /ʈ/, as in the verb /s.χ’a.ja.q^há/ “they say”, the honorific phrase /ʃ.já.ʔa.wu.ta.né.x’i/ “respected gentlemen and ladies”, and the noun /ʈ.ʔuʈ.tʃí.ni/ “vest, sleeveless (thing)”. One could symbolize the syllable structure of these three examples as F.CV.CV.CV, F.CV:CV.CV.CV.CV:CV, and F.CVC.CV.CV.

1.3.2. Nouns

Nouns are largely monosyllabic roots and polysyllabic compounds, however there are some polysyllabic nouns which are reconstructed in Proto-Na-Dene and which cannot be analyzed synchronically into component morphemes. Many monosyllabic nouns have the same shape as verb roots, and are semantically related to verbs, but it is not possible to prove derivation in either direction. Polysyllabic nouns which are not compounds or borrowings are usually derived from verbs, a class of nouns which includes a variety of words that are

usually considered “basic”, e.g. *kugás* /q^hukás/ “fog” which is derived from the verb *ku-CL[-D, ∅]-gaas* “be foggy”.⁷

Nouns are divided into two classes of possessable and nonpossessable, with the latter category largely comprised of personal names, place names, and social group names. Possessable nouns are further divisible into alienable and inalienable classes, with the latter having obligatory possession. Inalienable nouns are not marked for possession normally, and the addition of marking alienates them. Thus in the construction *xoots shá* /xu:ts fá/ |brown.bear head| the inalienable noun *shá* can be marked for possession as *xoots shá-yi* /xu:ts fá-ji/ |brown.bear head-PSS| but the semantics changes from “head of a (living) brown bear” to “severed head of a brown bear” as for a trophy.

Tlingit has two grammatical cases (§4.5.1), ergative *-ch* /-tʃ/ and unmarked absolutive. The ergative case is used to mark subject noun phrases of transitive verbs. It is not used to mark the sole argument noun phrase of an unergative intransitive verb. It is also occasionally used to mark instruments, as well as some other unusual usages. See §4.5.1.1 for more details.

There are nine local cases and several postpositions on Tlingit nouns (§4.5.2). The distinction between case and postposition is morphophonological, with cases being suffixes and postpositions being clitics or independent words. The locative case *-x* (/x/) indicates basic spatial or temporal position. The allative *-dé* ~ *-de* (/té(:)/ ~ /te(:)/) indicates movement towards a position or towards a temporal point. The ablative *-dáx* ~ *-dax* ~ *-dx* (/táχ/ ~ /taχ/ ~ /tχ/) indicates movement away from a position or after a temporal point. The perlativ *-náx* ~ *-nax* (/náχ/ ~ /naχ/) indicates movement along a path, position across from another location (e.g. across a river), or occasion during a temporal extent. The adessive suffix *-ḡaa* (/qa:/) indicates physical adjacency (“around, by”), movement following something (“after, following”), temporal approximation (“around, about”), temporal succession (“after, following”), and the object of an intention (“for, in order to obtain”). The instrumental *-teen* ~ *-een* ~ *-n* (/t^hi:n/ ~ /i:n/ ~ /n/) has both instrumental and comitative functions, indicating either instruments or accompaniment.

Two cases in Tlingit are typologically unusual. The punctual *-t* (/t/) indicates arriving at or being positioned at a spatial or temporal point, and also means moving about a point. This contrasts with the locative as the punctual refers specifically to a point, whereas the locative may apply to either a point

7. From this point forward I will give Tlingit forms in two transcriptions. Italic forms are in the orthography used elsewhere in this book and forms between slashes are in IPA.

or an extent. The pertinent $-x$ ($/-x/$) indicates contact with a physical object, having the physical form or some other quality of an object, or being a member of a group. Although both are somewhat unusual, they are relatively common in speech. The exact semantics of both cases depend somewhat on particular verbs; for example the punctual indicates movement around a point when it is used with atelic imperfective verbs of the *na*-conjugation, but indicates a point destination with motion verbs.

In addition to possession, cases, and postpositions, there are two additional types of inflection on nouns, namely diminutive and plural. The diminutive $-k'$ $/-k'/$ (also $-k'w$ $/-k'w/$ in rounded environments) is used productively to indicate smallness, endearment, and occasionally humility. Examples include $a\bar{x}$ $yádi$ $/a\bar{x}$ $játi$ “my child” versus $a\bar{x}$ $yátk'i$ $/a\bar{x}$ $játk'i$ “my little/dear child”, and $áa$ $/á:/$ “lake” versus $áak'w$ $/á:k'w/$ “small lake”. The diminutive is common in many direct address forms of kinship terms, for example $dach\bar{x}án$ $/tatf\bar{x}án/$ “grandchild” becomes $ch\bar{x}ánk'$ $/tʰ\bar{x}ánk'/$ “dear grandchild”. There are a small number of nouns which have the diminutive obligatorily attached, or alternatively which can be analyzed as having the diminutive lexically specified, such as $léelk'w$ $/l̥i:l̥k'w/$ “grandparent”. The diminutive occasionally appears suffixed to verbs as well, with a similar meaning of smallness or cuteness applied to the activity, but this does not seem to be a very productive use.

Plural inflection on nouns is complicated in several ways. First, plural marking is largely optional on nouns, a consequence of nouns in Tlingit being non-specific for number. Second, there are several different morphemes for plural marking. Third, plurality is often expressed in the verb rather than on nouns, using various plural morphemes and occasionally suppletive verb roots. The most common plural marker for nouns is the plural suffix $-x'$ $/-x'/$ (also rounded $-x'w$ $/-x'w/$). It has the basic meaning of plurality, which can range from two to any uncountable number of referents. Examples are du $yátx'i$ $/tu$ $játx'i$ “his children”, $hítx'$ $/hítx'/$ “houses”, $káa$ $\bar{x}oonx'i$ $/q^h_a: \bar{x}u:nx'i/$ “one’s friends”. In addition there is a collective plural enclitic $sáni$ $/sá:ni/$ which cooccurs with the plural suffix as in du $yátx'i$ $sáni$ $/tu$ $játx'i$ $sá:ni/$ “his children”. The plural or collective plural $hás$ $/hás/$ is an enclitic that is related to the independent plural third person pronoun and the plural verb prefix, among others. It is usually used to indicate collective plurals of people, and does not cooccur with the plural suffix $-x'$ $/-x'/$. An example is $a\bar{x}$ $káak$ $hás$ $/a\bar{x}$ $k^h_a:k$ $hás/$ “my maternal uncles”. There is another collective plural enclitic $yán$ $/ján/$ which is used only with certain kinship terms, e.g. $a\bar{x}$ $káni$ $yán$ $/a\bar{x}$ $k^h_a:ni$ $ján/$ “my brothers-in-law”.

1.3.3. Demonstratives

Tlingit lacks any analog to the articles found in European languages, however it does have a variety of demonstratives which sometimes serve a similar purpose. There is a four-way distinction in relative position among the demonstratives, namely the proximal *yáa* /já:/ “this (close to speaker)”, mesioproximal *héi* /hé:/ “this (near listener and speaker)”, mesiodistal *wéi* /wé:/ “that (closer to listener)”, and distal *yóo* /jú:/ “that (distant from listener and speaker)”. In practice the proximal and mesiodistal are used most commonly, with the distal being third most frequent and the mesioproximal used only occasionally. All four are used before nouns to indicate position in space, time, or discourse. They can take case suffixes as well, thus *yáa-t* /já:-t/ |DEM.PROX-PNCT| “here, this spot”, *wéi-dei* /wé:-te:/ |DEM.MDIST-ALL| “that way, towards that”. These demonstratives are found at the head of a number of complex demonstrative constructions, such as the proximal partitive demonstrative *yáat’aa* /já:t’a:/ “this one” which is composed of the proximal demonstrative *yáa* /já:/, the punctual case suffix *-t* /-t/, and the partitive pronominal *aa* /a:/ with ejection arising from the reduction of the transsyllabic cluster [t.ʔ] in the underlying form */já:t.ʔa:/.⁸

1.3.4. Adjectives

There are remarkably few true adjectives in Tlingit, although the category is not entirely absent. I have encountered eight prenominal adjectives and five postnominal adjectives, but there may be a few more which I have not found. Adjectives are only modifiers and never appear as predicates, with attributive forms of verbs serving for the predicate adjective role. Adjectives are entirely uninflected, with no change to their form in any context. The meaning of adjectives follows Dixon’s classic generalization about languages with a closed adjective class, in that Tlingit adjectives express dimension, age, and value, but not position, speed, or human propensity. Tlingit always has exceptions to every generalization, and here the exceptions are that color is not specified by adjective contrary to Dixon’s expectation, and also at least two physical properties are specified by adjective, namely *xook* /xu:k/ “dry, dried” and *k’áatl’* “thin and flat”.

I exclude all the obvious attributive verbs from the adjective category, e.g. *shayadihéin(i)* /ʃajatihé:n(i)/ “many” from the verb theme *sha-ÿa-S-CL[+D, Ø]-*

8. This is a relatively uncommon process, but does occur in some other frequent compounds, e.g. *Lingit’aani* /ʔinkit’ani/ “world, Earth” from *lingít aani* /ʔinka:ni/ “people’s land”.

haa-n “S be many”, and *kuwáat’* /k^huwá:t’/ “long” from the verb theme *O-CL[-D, ∅]-yaat’* “O (sticklike) be long” plus the comparative string *ka-u-CL[-I]-*. Beyond such forms there are a couple of adjectives which are probably deverbal but which have been independent long enough that the derivational connection is obscure. For instance the adjective *aak’é* /a:k’é/ “good” is certainly related to the verb root *k’ei* /k’e:/ “be good” as in the verb *O-CL[-D, ∅]-k’ei* “O be good”, and *xook* /xu:k/ “dry” which has the verb root *xook* /xu:k/ “dry”. These sorts of adjectives, while obviously related to extant verbs, do not have a predictable form derived from their source verb.

1.3.5. Numerals

The numeral system of Tlingit has undergone some restructuring in the past century or so under the influence of Indo-European languages like English and Russian. The original numeral system is quinquagesimal, meaning that it is based on fives and twenties, whereas the newer system is quindecimal being based on fives and tens. The original quinquagesimal numeral system is well documented and is still in use among some speakers, but the majority of speakers today have shifted to the quindecimal system. In both systems the numerals less than thirty are identical, with the numerals from one through five being basic, the numerals from six through ten being derived somewhat opaquely from one through five (e.g. *nas’gadooshú* /nas’katu:ʃú/ “eight” < *nás’k-du-shú* /nás’k-tu-ʃú/ |three-his-end|?), and the teens and twenties derived from ten or twenty and the subdecimal numerals (e.g. *jinkaak ka nas’gadooshú* /tʃink^ha:t q^ha nas’katu:ʃú/ “ten and eight”). Twenty is in both systems *tleiḱaa* /t^he:q^ha:/ which is derived from *tléix’-káa* /t^hé:x’-q^há:/ “one-man”, and the numerals from twenty-one to twenty-nine are simple compounds of twenty and the subdecimal numeral, e.g. *tleiḱaa ka nás’k* /t^he:q^ha: q^ha nás’k/ “twenty and three”. At thirty the two systems diverge, with the quinquagesimal form being *tleiḱaa ka jinkaak* /t^he:q^ha: q^ha tʃink^ha:t/ “twenty and ten” versus the quindecimal form *nás’k jinkaak* /nás’k tʃink^ha:t/ “three ten”.

Numbers of one hundred and above do seem to have existed before European contact, but the original forms were replaced by borrowings from Chinook Jargon or English at a fairly early point in history. La Pérouse (see §1.4.1.2 recorded the numeral *keijinkaak* /k^he:tʃin^ha:/ “five man” for one hundred, and *jinkaakka* /tʃink^ha:tq^ha:/ “ten man” for two hundred, so presumably the earlier quinquagesimal system was flexible enough to count well into the hundreds. No term for thousands seems to have existed before European contact. The modern terms

for hundred and thousand are borrowed from English, perhaps via Chinook Jargon. They are *háandit* /há:ntit/ “hundred” and *táawsan* /t^há:wsan/ “thousand”, and are used along with other numerals as in English, thus *déix háandit* /té:χ há:ntit/ “two hundred” and *nás’k táawsan* /nás’k t^há:wsan/ “three thousand”.

Tlingit has in addition to the basic cardinal numerals a few sets which are used to count particular things. These are transparently based on the cardinal numerals with the addition of various suffixes. The numerals which are used to count people feature a suffix *-náx* /-náχ/, so *tléináx* /t^hlé:náχ/ “one person”, *dáx(i)náx* /táχ(i)náχ/ “two people”, *nás’gináx* /nás’kináχ/ “three people”, *daax.oonináx* /ta:xʔu:nináχ/ “four people”, *keijínináx* /k^he:tʃínináχ/ “five people”, etc. Numbers of instances are counted with numerals including a suffix *-dahéen* /-tahí:n/, thus *tleidahéen* /t^hlé:tahí:n/ “once”, *daχdahéen* /taχtahí:n/ “twice”, *nas’gidahéen* /nas’kitahí:n/ “thrice”, and so forth.

[[Ordinals. Types.]]

1.3.6. Adverbs

[[Adverbs.]]

1.3.7. Verbs

[[Verbal morphology. Template system. Discontinuous morphology. Pronominal arguments. Incorporation. Number marking. Plural suppletion. Classificatory verbs.]] [[Transitivity. Lack of passive.]]

1.3.8. Evidentiality

[[Evidentiality. Particles.]]

1.3.9. Word order

[[Word order.]]

1.4. Literature review

The primary sources of grammatical information about Tlingit are, in chronological order, Veniaminov 1846, Kelly & Willard 1905, S11, B17, S66, N66, S72, NS73, and 191. Only those works by Boas, Naish, Story, and Leer are reliable in terms

of analysis, and beyond them only Kelly & Willard 1905 is phonemically accurate. All the references on Tlingit grammar are sketches except for 191 which is focused on the tense-mood-aspect system of the verb and otherwise can also be considered a sketch grammar. Thus Tlingit rejoices in nine different sketch grammars but no comprehensive reference grammar, hence the need for this work.

1.4.1. Early explorers

The earliest European explorers of the region encountered the Tlingit many times and recorded snatches of the language in their journals and logs. The earliest record of Tlingit speech is also the earliest historical contact with the Tlingit, namely the encounter of Aleksei Chirikov in Surge Bay on the outer coast of Yakobi Island in 1741. This record only gives one word, long debated in the literature. Numerous other explorers and traders visited the region up until the colonization by Baranov and the Russian American company in the early 1800s, but only a few explorers made any kind of reasonable record of Tlingit speech.

[[Zaikov? Ismailov and Bocharov? Douglas?]]
[[Malaspina. Vancouver.]]

1.4.1.1. Chirikov, 1741

The compendious tome by Dauenhauer, Dauenhauer, & Black (DDB08:1–20) contains the most thorough review and analysis of the first historically recorded contact between Tlingits and Europeans, with an intensive and thorough investigation by Allan Engstrom (DDB08:11–20) that locates the event at Surge Bay on Yakobi Island, at the Tlingit village called *Apolosovo* or *Vorovskoe* (*Аполосово* “ne’er-do-well”, *Воровское* “(village) of thieves”) in Russian (DDB08:13,19).

The famous explorer Vitus Bering commanded a Russian naval expedition in 1741 to find the mythical Juan de Gama’s Land which was reported to exist between 45° and 47° N, somewhere in the North Pacific (DDB08:11). Alexei Chirikov (*Алексе́й Чириковъ*), captain of the Russian Navy packetboat *St. Paul* (*Святой Павелъ*), found land around 56°36′ N on 15 July 1741 near Cape Ommaney on the southern tip of Baranov Island. He traveled north along the coast of Baranov Island and attempted landing on 18 July 1741 at about 57°50′ N on the coast of Yakobi Island, intending to take on fresh water.

Chirikov stood about a mile offshore in the *St. Paul* and sent the longboat commanded by Fleet Master Avraam N. Dement'ev (*Авраамъ Н. Дементьевъ*) accompanied by ten men (DDB08:11). This longboat traveled out of sight and never returned. Chirikov could not anchor and tacked up and down the coast, buffeted by storms. On 24 July 1741 he sent the dory with a carpenter and caulker towards shore, figuring that the longboat could not return due to damage. This boat did not return either (DDB08:12).

On 25 July 1741, two small Tlingit canoes paddled out of the bay towards the *St. Paul*. Chirikov could not make out their faces, but could hear them twice shouting “Agai, agai” and saw them wave their hands, then return to shore (DDB08:8). They could not be convinced to come closer. Chirikov then gave up and departed the area, cutting short his exploration because he could no longer take on fresh water without small boats.

The meaning of “agai” (Cyrillic ⟨арай⟩ /agaj/) has been debated quite a bit over the years. Dauenhauer, Dauenhauer, & Black (DDB08:9, note 5) offer a summary of the debate. Emmons and following him De Laguna [[citation]] suggested *haadé* (/ha:té(:)/ *haa-dé* |hither-ALL|) “over here” which is a common Tlingit directive. Barratt [[citation]] supposed a typographic error confusing Cyrillic manuscript ⟨u⟩ /i/ and ⟨y⟩ /u/ to give a Cyrillic ⟨арай⟩ /agau/. Following this proposed rereading, Barratt then claimed that the original Tlingit was *haagú* “come here (sg.)”, as in the following example.

- (1) *haa*=S-CL[-D, Ø]-goot “S (sg.) come hither by foot”
haagú!
 /ha:kú/
haa=Ø-Ø-Ø-gú
 hither=ZCNJ-2SG.S-CL[-D, Ø, -I]-go.foot.SG
 “come here (by foot)!”; sg. subject imperative

The Dauenhauers argued strongly against this hypothesis since the original is ⟨арай⟩ with a diacritic which does not normally occur over ⟨y⟩. The letter ⟨ÿ⟩ does occur in Belarusian to symbolize /w/, and has the same purpose in the Cyrillic alphabet for Siberian Yupik. It did not see regular use in Belarusian until the beginning of the 20th century, and ⟨ÿ⟩ is peculiar enough to Belarusian that there is a monument erected to it in the city of Polotsk. We can safely assume that Chirikov did not mistake ⟨ÿ⟩ for ⟨ÿ̇⟩. Furthermore, as can be seen from the example above, the verb root indicates movement by foot rather than the

expected verb root *koox̣* “go by boat, vehicle”, as occurs in phrases like *haat yikúx̣*.

- (2) *haat=S-CL[-D, Ø]-koox̣* “S come hither by boat, vehicle”
haat yikúx̣!
 /ha:t.ji.q^húχ/
haa-t=Ø-yi-Ø-kúx̣
 hither-PNCT=ZCNJ-2PL.S-CL[-D, Ø, -I]-go.boat
 “come here (by boat)!”; pl. subject imperative

Although Interior Tlingit speakers (§2.1.2, §3.5.1.3) often do not maintain the distinction between movement by foot and movement by vehicle, Coastal Tlingit people (§2.1.1, §3.5.1) who travel extensively on the water are acutely aware of the difference and would be extremely unlikely to neglect making this distinction in their speech. Additionally, the verb in Barrat’s analysis specifically for singular subjects rather than plural subjects, and it is unusual for Tlingit speakers to address a plurality using the singular imperative.

The Dauenhauers have instead speculated a few times that the Tlingit may have been saying *aḡáa* “paddle! (sg.)” or *ayḡáa* “paddle! (pl.)”, encouraging the Russians to attempt crossing the treacherous mouth of Surge Bay by timing the waves at slack water and paddling hard in a manner similar to how La Pérouse described Tlingits entering Lituya Bay (De Laguna 1972:92).

- (3) *a-S-CL[-D, Ø]-ḡaa* “S paddle”
- a. *aḡáa!*
 /ʔa.ḡá:/
a-Ø-Ø-Ø-ḡáa
 3O-ZCNJ-2SG.S-CL[-D, Ø, -I]-paddle
 “paddle!”; sg. subject imperative
- b. *ayḡáa!*
 /ʔaj.ḡá:/
a-Ø-yi-Ø-ḡáa
 3O-ZCNJ-2PL.S-CL[-D, Ø, -I]-paddle
 “paddle!”; pl. subject imperative

As noted above, since Tlingit speakers are usually quite conscious of the difference between singular and plural subjects, it is probably more likely that

they would have said the plural imperative *ayxáa*. I speculate that Chirikov’s ⟨арай⟩ may be a misremembering of heard ⟨айга⟩ /ajga/ which would be entirely compatible with Tlingit *ayxáa* over a long distance and noisy seas. This misremembering would not be unlikely given that naval commanders of the period would enter significant events into the ship’s log typically several hours after the actual event, at some point when it was more convenient to spend some time writing in private. Additionally, in Russian the the diphthong ⟨ай⟩ /aj/ is uncommon in word-initial position, but is unremarkable word-finally.

1.4.1.2. La Pérouse, 1786

Commodore Jean-François de Galaup, Comte de La Pérouse was one of the earliest Europeans to visit the Tlingit, commanding the French naval frigate *L’Astrolabe* and accompanied by the *La Boussole* under Viscomte de Langle. La Pérouse came to the Alaskan shore on the morning of 23 June 1786, somewhere between Icy Bay and Yakutat⁹ Bay at a place he called “Pointe de La Boussole” that De Laguna identifies as “a point just west of Sitkagi¹⁰ Bluffs, or even what then corresponded to Point Riou at Icy Bay” (De Laguna 1972:115). On 2 July 1786 La Pérouse arrived at Lituya Bay,¹¹ which he called “Port des Français”, and in which he anchored and stayed for about a month. De Laguna (1972:114–123) offers an extended summary of the events and ethnographic details recorded to which the reader is recommended for further background. During La Pérouse’s stay he and his crew picked up a bit of Tlingit, and essayed an attempt to transcribe some of the language. The following extracts are taken from the second volume of his four volume posthumous *Voyage de La Pérouse, Autour de Monde*, published 1798 in Paris. The translations are mine,¹² with some assistance from those in the anonymous 1799 translation into English published by John Stockdale (La Pérouse 1799).

*M. de Lamanon est l’auteur de la dissertation suivante sur la langue de ce peuple ; je n’en donnerai ici que les termes numériques afin de satisfaire les lecteurs qui aiment à comparer ceux des différens idiomes:
[...]*

9. See §4.15.4.3 for the meaning of Tlingit *Yaakwdaat* /ja:k^wta:t/.

10. From Tlingit *S’itkáyi* /s’itk^háui/ *s’it-ká-yi* |glacier-HSFC-PSS| “atop the glacier”.

11. Tlingit *Ltu.aa* /t^hu?a:/ *lú-tú-?aa* |nose-inside-lake| “lake inside the nose”.

12. Mary Walworth also deserves much credit for helping me with my rusty French, but I would have no blame upon her for my imperfect work.

Monsieur de Lamanon is the author of the following dissertation regarding the language of this people; I have only given here the numerical terms for the satisfaction of readers who like comparing those [numerals] of different idioms: [see table 1.1, p. 21]

The way that this statement is worded makes it somewhat ambiguous as to the specific author of the numerals listed in table 1.1. I will assume that the numerals were collected by de Lamanon since he seems to have been the most linguistically inclined of the crew. It is nonetheless possible that some other member of the crew, perhaps even La Pérouse himself, actually elicited these numerals.

The transcription is remarkably accurate for being transcribed through French, partly aided by the fact that French speakers are familiar with uvular sounds due to the French uvular fricative /ʁ/. The numeral ⟨kouehok⟩ “nine” is a misspelling of original */kouchok/ by the editor Milet-Mureau or whoever transcribed from the original manuscript. It is consistently misspelled in the numerals 29 and 180 as well. Given that de Lamanon was reliable at capturing /ʃ/ elsewhere as ⟨ch⟩, this misspelling is certainly due to mistaking ⟨c⟩ for ⟨e⟩ which is easily done with the dense formal handwriting used at the time.

There are several interesting features of de Lamanon’s numerals. Most importantly, the system is clearly quinquevigesimal (bases five and twenty) rather than the later quinquedecimal (bases five and ten) system which seems to have developed in the late 19th century (see §5.6). This is clear from the unit *kāa* /q^ha:/ which is derived transparently from the word *kāa* /q^há:/ “man”, which indexes twenties as the sum of a man’s fingers and toes. De Lamanon was apparently confused by this, despite French having its own vestiges of a vigesimal system, since he concluded that the base unit was ten instead. Thus de Lamanon has *trente* “thirty” for ⟨neiskrha⟩ which is *nas’kkaa* /nas’k.q^ha:/ “three-men, sixty”. This mistake fortuitously led to him eliciting numbers up to 200 rather than stopping at 100, thus giving us proof that the Tlingit counting system of the time could extend at least to hundreds if not further. At the time Tlingits were probably not trading in such quantities very often, but during the Russian American era Tlingit people began to work with larger quantities as part of the fur trade.

De Lamanon seems to have perceived Tlingit /t^h/ as /kl/, something common to speakers of most European languages. He is however inconsistent between ⟨kl⟩ and just ⟨k⟩, using the former only for six and numerals based upon it, and the latter for numerals based upon one.

Pour représenter l’r guttural, que ces peuples prononcent encore plus

<i>French</i>	<i>“La Langue”</i>	<i>Tlingit (IPA)</i>	<i>No.</i>
un (1)	<i>keirrk</i>	tʰé:xʹ	1
deux (2)	<i>theirh</i>	te:χ	2
trois (3)	<i>neisk</i>	násʹk	3
quatre (4)	<i>taakhoun</i>	ta:x.ʔu:n	4
cinq (5)	<i>keitschine</i>	kʰe:.tʃín	5
six (6)	<i>kleitouchou</i>	tʰe:.tu:.fú	6
sept (7)	<i>takatouchou</i>	taχ.ʔa.tu:.fú	7
huit (8)	<i>netskatouchou</i>	nasʹ.ka.tu:.fú	8
neuf (9)	<i>kouehok</i>	ku:.fúq	9
dix (10)	<i>tchinecate</i>	tʃin.ka:t	10
onze (11)	<i>keirkrha-keirrk</i>	tʰe:.qʰa: qʰa tʰé:xʹ	21
douze (12)	<i>keirkrha-theirh</i>	tʰe:.qʰa: qʰa te:χ	22
treize (13)	<i>keirkrha-neisk</i>	tʰe:.qʰa: qʰa násʹk	23
quatorze (14)	<i>keirkrha-taakhoun</i>	tʰe:.qʰa: qʰa ta:x.ʔu:n	24
quinze (15)	<i>keirkrha-keitschine</i>	tʰe:.qʰa: qʰa kʰe:.tʃín	25
seize (16)	<i>keirkrha-kleitouchou</i>	tʰe:.qʰa: qʰa tʰe:.tu:.fú	26
dix-sept (17)	<i>keirkrha-takatouchou</i>	tʰe:.qʰa: qʰa taχ.ʔa.tu:.fú	27
dix-huit (18)	<i>keirkrha-netskatouchou</i>	tʰe:.qʰa: qʰa nasʹ.ka.tu:.fú	28
dix-neuf (19)	<i>keirkrha-kouehok</i>	tʰe:.qʰa: qʰa ku:.fúq	29
vingt (20)	<i>theirha</i>	te:χ.qʰa:	40
trente (30)	<i>neiskrha</i>	nasʹk.qʰa:	60
quarante (40)	<i>taakhounrha</i>	ta:x.ʔu:n.qʰa:	80
cinquante (50)	<i>keitschinerka</i>	kʰe:.tʃin.qʰa:	100
soixante (60)	<i>kleitouchourha</i>	tʰe:.tu:.fu.qʰa:	120
soixant-dix (70)	<i>takatouchourha</i>	taχ.ʔa.tu:.fu.qʰa:	140
quatre-vingt (80)	<i>netskatouchourha</i>	nasʹ.ka.tu:.fu.qʰa:	160
quatre-vingt-dix (90)	<i>kouehokrha</i>	ku:.fuq.qʰa:	180
cent (100)	<i>tchinecaterha</i>	tʃin.kʰa:t.qʰa:	200

Table 1.1: Tlingit numerals collected by de Lamnaon and La Pérouse (La Pérouse 1798:237–238).

durement que les Allemands le chr, on a substitué le rh, comme si l'on prononçait rhabiller en grasseyant fortement, et comme plus conforme à la langue française.

For the representation of the guttural *r*, which these people pronounce longer than the Germans do *chr*, one substitutes the *rh*, as one pronounces *rhabiller* [“to reclothe”] in a strong guttural voice, and more conforming to the French language.

What de Lamanon was attempting to do here was to describe the uvular sounds of the Tlingit language, specifically the uvular fricative sound /χ/. His reference to German ⟨chr⟩ is probably to the sound [χ] which occurs in some German varieties, with ⟨ch⟩ capturing the the frication and voicelessness, and ⟨r⟩ indicating the uvularity since ⟨ch⟩ is usually either /ç/ or /x/. Tlingit /χ/ is not really pronounced longer than what one might find among some German speakers, but /χ/ may be somewhat more noisy and trill-like since it often occurs as a voiceless uvular trill [ʀ]. This trilling is probably what de Lamanon was trying to get at with his term *grasseyant fortement*, as French speakers often produce the voiced uvular trill [ʀ] for /ʁ/ when heavily emphasizing or prolonging the sound.

Nos caractères ne peuvent exprimer la langue de ces peuples : ils ont, à la vérité, quelques articulations semblables aux nôtres; mais plusieurs nous sont absolument étrangères : ils ne font aucun usage des consonnes B, F, X, J, D, P, V; et, malgré leur talent pour l'imitation, ils n'ont jamais pu prononcer les quatres premières.

Our characters do not allow expression of the language of these people: they have, in truth, some articulations resembling ours; but more are to us absolutely strange: they do not use the consonants B, F, X, J, D, P, V; and, despite their talent for imitation, they can never pronounce the first four.

De Lamanon’s statement that his alphabet cannot capture the sounds of Tlingit is a familiar refrain heard throughout the historical records of the 19th and early 20th centuries. With between 44 and 48 consonants, it is easy to see why Europeans of the time would be daunted by the task of transcribing Tlingit. De Lamanon correctly recognized that Tlingit has some sounds similar to those in French, and since he had already discussed the uvular fricative it must be assumed that he was here referring to the more prosaic sounds like /t/, /s/, /k/, /kʷ/, and the like. He was also aware that there are sounds in Tlingit which do

not exist in any European language, and we now know that some Tlingit sounds are unattested in any other known language. De Lamanon must have felt some dismay at the fact that he could not do the Tlingit language any sort of justice in writing.

Tlingit lacks labial consonants in nearly every dialect, so de Lamanon was perfectly correct in noting the absence of [b], [p], [f], and [v]. What de Lamanon meant by ⟨J⟩ is probably the sound [ʒ], which Tlingit lacks along with any other voiced fricatives. His mention of ⟨D⟩ is interesting; de Lamanon probably meant to refer to [d], and this may indicate that he was aware of Tlingit's lack of voiced stops.

Il en a été de même pour l'L mouillée et le GN mouillé : ils articulaient la lettre R comme si elle était double, et en grasseyant beaucoup; ils prononcent le chr des Allemands avec autant de dureté que les Suisses de certains cantons. Ils ont aussi un son articulé très-difficile à saisir; on ne pouvait entreprendre de l'imiter sans exciter leur rire; il est en partie représenté par le lettres Khrlr, ne faisant qu'une syllabe, prononcée en même temps du gosier et de la langue : cette syllabe se trouve dans le mot khrlreies, qui signifie cheveux. Leurs consonnes initiales son K, T, N, S, M; le premières sont celles qu'ils emploient le plus souvent : aucun de leurs mots ne commence par R, et ils se terminent presque tous par ou, ouls, oulch, ou par des voyelles. Le grasseyement, le grand nombre de K, et les consonnes doubles, rendent cette langue très-dure; elle est moins gutturale chez les hommes que chez les femmes, que ne peuvent prononcer les labiales à cause de la rouelle de bois nommée Kentaga, qu'elles enchâssent dans la lèvre inférieure.

On s'aperçoit moins de la rudesse de leur langue lorsqu'ils chantent. Je n'ai pu faire que très-peu d'observations sur les parties du discours, vu la difficulté de communiquer des idées abstraites par des signes : j'ai cependant reconnu qu'ils avaient des interjections pour exprimer les setnimens d'admiration, de colère, ou de plaisir ; je ne crois pas qu'ils aient des articles, car je n'ai point trouvé de mots qui revinssent souvent et qu'ils servissent à lier leurs discours. Ils connaissent les rapports numériques ; ils ont des noms de nombres, sans cependant distinguer le pluriel du singulier, ni par aucune différence dans la terminaison, ni par des articles. Je leur ai fait voir une dent de phoque ; ils l'ont appelée *kaourré*, et ils ont donné

le même nom, sans aucun changement, à plusieurs dents réunies. Leurs noms collectifs sont en très-petit nombre : ils n'ont pas assez généralisé leurs idées pour avoir des mots un peu abstraits ; ils ne les ont pas assez particularisées pour ne pas donner le même nom à des choses très-distinctes : ainsi chez eux *kaaga* signifie également tête et visage, et *alcaou* chef et ami. Je n'ai trouvé aucune ressemblance entre les mots de cette langue et celle d'Alaska, Norton, Nootka, ni celle des Groënlandais, des Esquimaux, des Mexicains, des Nadoessis et des Chipavas, dont j'ai comparé les vocabulaires. Je leur ai prononcé des mots de ces différens idiomes ; ils n'en ont compris aucun, et j'ai varié ma prononciation autant qu'il m'a été possible : mais, puisqu'il n'y ait peut-être pas une idée ou une chose qui s'exprime par le même mot chez les Indiennes du Port des Français et chez les peuples que je viens de citer, il doit y avoir une grande affinité de son entre cette langue et celle de l'entrée de Nootka. Le K est dans l'une et dans l'autre la lettre dominante ; on la retrouve dans presque tous les mots. Les consonnes initiales et les terminaisons sont assez souvent les mêmes, et il n'est peut-être pas impossible que cette langue ait une origine commune avec la langue mexicaine : mais cette origine, si elle existe, que ces idiomes n'ont quelques rapports que dans les premiers élémens des mots, et non dans leur signification.

1.4.2. Russian America

Review by De Laguna (1972:158–180).

Shelikov and Baranov's wordlist from Davydov (1810). Wrangell 1839. Kamenskii 1985.

1.4.2.1. Veniaminov, 1840s

Veniaminov (1846) was the pioneer of Tlingit grammatical studies with the publication of his *Замѣчания о колошенскомъ и кадьякскомъ языкахъ*. This work has never been translated into English, so the following excerpts are the first published translations, however inadequate they may be.

Якутатскимъ языкомъ говорятъ жители Якутата и далѣе къ западу. Онъ раздѣляется на два нарѣчія: Якутатское и Угаленское; число говорящихъ обѣими нарѣчїями не болѣе 300 душъ.

The *Yakutat* language is spoken in the village of Yakutat and further to the south. It is divided into two dialects: *Yakutat* and *Ugalentz*; the number of speakers of both dialects is not above 300 souls.

Veniaminov makes a distinction between the Tlingit language spoken in Yakutat and the Tlingit language spoken in Sitka, which he discusses below. Here he notes that in Yakutat there are two “dialects”, one being “Yakutat” and the other “Ugalentz”. The latter is actually the Eyak language, as noted by Krauss [cite]. Veniaminov’s “Yakutat” dialect is Tlingit, but relations between the Russian colonists and the Yakutat Tlingit were poor such that Veniaminov may have been unaware that the two were actually the same language.

Ситхинскій или собственно такъ называемый *Колошенскій* языкъ употребляется отъ Лътуа до Стахина, и имѣеть почти одно нарѣчїе; число говорящихъ имъ въ послѣднее время (послѣ оспы) не простирается болѣе 4500. О свойствѣ сего языка будетъ сказано ниже.

The *Sitka* or more properly the *Kolosh* language is used from Lituya to Stikine, and has essentially only one dialect; its number of speakers in later times (after smallpox) does not extend beyond 4500. [..]

Veniaminov here properly equates the language spoken in Sitka with “Kolosh”, the Russian term for Tlingit. He states that it is used from Lituya Bay to the Stikine River; presumably Veniaminov was unaware of Interior Tlingit spoken up the Taku River and around the great glacial lakes, as well as the Southern Tlingit dialects spoken around Prince of Wales Island and Revillagigedo Island. Veniaminov is correct that Northern Tlingit from Lituya Bay to the Stikine River is essentially a single dialect, since speakers throughout that region have only minor differences in their speech. Some Stikine speakers spoke the Transitional dialect along with people from Kake and perhaps Angoon, but the differences between this and the Northern Tlingit dialect that Veniaminov was familiar with are minimal.

Всѣ наши Американскіе языки по образованію своему (сколко можно было узнать) раздѣляются на два главные вида, одинъ отъ другаго совершенно различныя, а именно : *Уналашкинскій* и *Колошенскій*. Отличительныя ихъ свойства состоятъ въ слѣдующемъ: 1) Въ языкахъ перваго образованія три числа: единственное, двойственное и множественное; а въ языкахъ

второго образования обыкновенно два числа: единственное и множественное. 2) Падежи въ первыхъ языкахъ раздѣляются на неопредѣленные и прижательные, и потому всѣхъ падежей или окончаній болѣе 36; а въ послѣднихъне болѣе трехъ падежей или окончаній. 3) Глаголы по числамъ и лицамъ въ первыхъ измѣняются обыкновенно на концѣ, или въ началѣ слова. 4) Въ языкахъ перваго образования предлоги и нарѣчія имѣютъ числа, и потому суть части рѣчи измѣняемыя, а въ послѣднихъ языкахъ того совсѣмъ нѣтъ.

[[Nadezhdin 1896. Veniaminov 1901.]]

1.4.2.2. German philologists, 1850s–1880s

Veniaminov’s work on Tlingit reached a European audience relatively quickly but triggered only passing interest, unsurprising given the focus on Indo-European languages at the time. Buschmann (1857) seems to have been the first scholar outside of Russian-America to propose a historical relationship between Tlingit and some other Native American language. In this case, Buschmann offered some comparisons with Akimel O’odham (Pima) which, being based on Veniaminov’s impoverished analysis of Tlingit phonology, were ultimately nonsense. For more on Buschmann’s work as well as other early genealogical proposals see chapter 13.

[[Pfizmaier? Mentioned in Müller 1884.]]

Müller (1884), a professor at the University of Vienna, also forayed into Tlingit based on Veniaminov’s documentation. Müller was used to interpretational problems in philology, and so engaged in some creative reconstruction of Tlingit based on Veniaminov’s flawed data. He proposed a five vowel system of ⟨i⟩, ⟨e⟩, ⟨a⟩, ⟨o⟩, and ⟨u⟩, as well as an impoverished consonant system with sixteen sounds that lacked uvulars or ejectives, and included an ⟨m⟩. Müller might have been productive had he actually worked with living Tlingit speakers, but instead his armchair effort is largely useless except as a historical curiosity.

1.4.3. Early U.S. period

Review by De Laguna (1972:183–207)

Latham 1848.

Dall, 1870. Bancroft, 1874. Lt. C.E.S. Wood, 1877. Muir, 1879.

Krause, 1881–1882 (Krause 1885, Krause 1956, Krause 1993).

Schwatka, 1883. Abercrombie, 1884. Emmons, 1885. Young, 1880s (S. H. Young 1886). Niblack, 1888. De La Grasserie 1902. Jones 1914.

1.4.4. Kelly and Willard

Kelly & Willard 1905.

1.4.5. Swanton

Swanton 1908, 1909; S11.

1.4.6. Boas and Shotridge

Boas 1891. Boas 1916. B17. S15.

1.4.6.1. Other Boasian authors

Goddard 1920. Durlach 1928. Miller 1930. V39; V44.

1.4.7. J.P. Harrington

Sources?

1.4.8. Twentieth century anthropologists

Oberg 1937. De Laguna 1960. Olson 1967. De Laguna 1972.

Besides the anthropologists listed previously there are a large number of other anthropologists who have conducted research among the Tlingit. The number is relatively large, and I can only approximate it with a list of those whom I have met or know secondhand.

[[Viola Garfield, Sergei Kan, Thomas Thornton, Stephen Langdon, Steve Henrikson, Madonna Moss, Lydia Black, Judith Berman, Elizabeth Kunibe, Myra Gilliam, Kenneth Tollefson, Catherine McClellan, Julie Cruikshank, Laura Klien, Andrei Grinëv, Jeane Breinig, Kristin Barsness, Kirk Dombrowski, ...]]

Most have not published on the language, but their work may include the occasional linguistic insight which is not discussed elsewhere.

1.4.9. Naish and Story

1.4.10. The present

1.4.10.1. Krauss

1.4.10.2. Dauenhauers

1.4.10.3. Leer

1.4.10.4. Cable

1.4.10.5. Crippen

2. *The Tlingit people*

The Tlingit people have been an enduring subject of anthropology since the dawn of the 19th century, including some of the most famous anthropologists of the American tradition. Like most Northwest Coast cultures, Tlingit life is saturated with art and ceremony, and the incredible natural wealth of the environment has provided for a rich, highly articulated culture despite being a “mere” hunter-gatherer society.

In this chapter I will attempt to give a crude outline of Tlingit life and society. There are far better works available by accomplished anthropologists, and I refer the interested reader to them rather than relying on my outline here. The essential ethnographies are Krause 1885 (translated into English as Krause 1956), Oberg 1937 (published as Oberg 1973), Olson 1967, De Laguna 1972, Kan 1989, and Emmons 1991. The last work by Emmons and De Laguna is probably the most accessible to a general readership, although for breadth and depth De Laguna’s (1972) *Under Mount Saint Elias: The History and Culture of the Yakutat Tlingit* is peerless.

2.1. Location

The primary homeland of the Tlingit is called simply *Lingít Aaní*, literally “Tlingit land” or “land of the Tlingit”.¹ It is today essentially coextensive with what is known as Southeast Alaska or “The Panhandle”, a narrow strip of coastline backed to the east by the precipitous Coast Range and sheltered to the west by the innumerable thickly forested islands and long, convoluted fjords and channels of the Alexander Archipelago. The southernmost range of Tlingit territory is coincident with the USA-Canada border, on the landward side along the Portland Canal which terminates in the towns of Stewart (Canada) and Hyder (USA), and on the seaward side along the Dixon Entrance which separates the

1. Morphologically *lingít aan-ǰí* [Tlingit land-PSS].

Alexander Archipelago from the Queen Charlotte Islands. The only exception in the south is the ocean-facing southwestern coast of Prince of Wales Island and other islands to the west which are Kaigani (Alaskan) Haida territory. This region appears to have been relatively recently settled by Haida from northern Graham Island and Langara Island, perhaps as late as a mere decade before European contact (Stephen Langdon, p.c. 2009).

[[Need a line-drawing map of the territory and adjacent groups, including rivers.]]

To the north *Lingít Aani* extends along the coast of the Gulf of Alaska, reaching as far as Cape Suckling and the edge of Prince William Sound. From Yakutat towards the Sound the territory was traditionally inhabited by a mix of Tlingit and Eyak, with the Tlingit inexorably pressing westward and absorbing the Eyak population into Tlingit society. The Gulf Coast is like the Southeast in that it is a long narrow strip of coastline shrouded in temperate rainforest and backed by nearly impassible mountains. On the other hand the Gulf Coast is very unlike the Southeast because there are essentially no islands sheltering it from the open Pacific. Consequently canoe travel is somewhat different, and many other facets of life are distinct from the Southeast population.

There are seven rivers which pierce the coastal mountains, from south to north they are the Nass (*Naas*), Stikine (*Shtax'héen*), Taku (*T'aakú*), Chilkat (*Jilkaat*), the pair of Alsek and Tatshenshini (*Alséix*, *T'achanshahéeni*), and the Copper (*Eek Héeni*).² Except for the last, each of these great rivers has at some point been a thoroughfare for Tlingits traveling into the interior of the continent. Two rivers ended up hosting a permanent interior population of Tlingits. The people traveling up the Taku, Chilkat, and Alsek–Tatshenshini traded and intermarried with the Tagish Athabaskans who inhabited the river valley and the great glacial lakes at the headwaters of the Yukon River: Teslin (*Deisleen*), Atlin (*Áatlein*), Tagish (*Taagish*), Bennett ([[?]]), and Lindeman ([[?]]). Intermarriage and acculturation eventually saturated the Tagish to the point that today they identify largely as Tlingit, and their particular dialects of the language show some innovative and conservative features that both unite them with and set them apart from their maritime cousins.

2.1.1. Coastal Tlingit

The COASTAL TLINGIT are those people who live near saltwater. The term used by the Interior Tlingit (see §2.1.2) in reference to the Coastal Tlingit is *Eil'ká*

2. For glosses and meanings of the names of these major rivers, see §4.15.4.

Kwáan which means “on the saltwater people” (*éil’-ká kwáan* |salt.water-HSFC people|); this term seems to be catching on among the Coastal people as the modern level of interaction increases between the two groups. A more accurate term in English might be “Maritime Tlingit”, given that although all of the *Eil’ká Kwáan* live on or very near salt water, many live deep in the Alexander Archipelago and hence quite far from the continental coastline. The Coastal Tlingit form the vast majority of the Tlingit population, both today and over the last two centuries of recorded history. Anthropologically the Coastal Tlingit have been the primary focus of investigation, and their lifeways and culture are often treated as prototypical for the Tlingit.

The homeland of the Coastal Tlingit is today generally referred to as “South-east Alaska”, which includes not only the islands of the Alexander Archipelago but also the continental coast from the Portland Canal to the area around Yakutat. Beyond Yakutat the traditional ownership overlaps with that of the neighboring Eyak people who were culturally assimilating to the Tlingit at the time of European contact. Both islands and coastline are steep, with mountains rising precipitously from the water. Fjords extend deep into the Coast Range of mountains, particularly Lynn Canal in the north and Portland Canal in the south. Geology is varied, [Wrangell terrane, etc.]. In contrast with the southern Pacific Northwest, glaciers are relatively common. The many glaciers emptying into Glacier Bay [name] north of Hoonah (*Xunaa*) feature prominently in a number of Tlingit myths and histories. The Mendenhall Glacier [name] stands prominently behind Auke Bay (*Áak’w*) and is a major geographic feature of the area. One of the largest glaciers in North America is Malaspina Glacier near Yakutat (*Yaakwdaat*), which has an area of 3900 km² and is up to 600 m thick in some places. Also near Yakutat is the longest tidewater glacier in North America, Hubbard Glacier [name], which is 122 km long and occasionally blocks off Russell Fjord causing massive glacial lake outburst floods when the dam is released. The southernmost tidewater glacier in North America is Le Conte Glacier (*Xeitl*) near Petersburg (*Gantiyaakw Séedi*); it drains the Stikine Icefield which also feeds the Stikine and Taku rivers.

Nearly all land is cloaked in thick coniferous rainforest, comprised primarily of *shéey* ~ *shéiy(i)* (*Picea sitchensis* (Bong.) Carr., “Sitka spruce”) and *yán*³ (*Tsuga heterophylla* (Raf.) Sarg., “western hemlock”). Interspersed in this forest is *xáay* (*Callitropsis nootkatensis*⁴ (D.Don) Florin, “yellow-cedar”), *leiyís* (*Abies lasiocarpa* (Hooker) Nuttall “subalpine fir”), and at high elevations *s’éx*

3. Also *yáy* in Teslin (LHR01:M-96), not to be confused with *yáay* “whale”.

4. Like the English name, the scientific name has a number of variations involving its ex-

(*Tsuga mertensiana* (Bong.) Carr, “mountain hemlock”). South of Sumner Strait the slightly warmer winter temperatures support *laax* (*Thuja plicata* Donn ex. D.Don, “western redcedar”), *leiyís* (*Abies amabilis* Douglas ex. J.Forbes “Pacific silver fir”, synonymous with *Abies lasiocarpa*), and *s’áks*⁵ (*Taxus brevifolia* Nutt., “Pacific yew, western yew”). [muskeg] In river valleys, around edges of standing water, and on disturbed sites the region’s few large broadleaf (eudicot) trees can be found: *dúk* (*Populus balsamifera* ssp. *trichocarpa* Torr. & A.Gray, “black cottonwood”), *at daayí* (*Betula papyrifera* Marsh, “paper birch”), *x’áax’* (*Malus fusca* (Raf.) C.K.Schneid., “Pacific crabapple”), *kalchaneit* (*Sorbus sitchensis* M.Roem, “Sitka mountain-ash”), *shéix’w* (*Alnus rubra* Bong., “red alder, big alder”), *keishísh* (*Alnus viridis* ssp. *sinuata* (Regel) A.Löve & D.Löve, “Sitka alder, beach alder”), and *ch’áal’* (various *Salix* spp., “willow”, especially *S. sitchensis* Sanson ex Bong., “Sitka willow”).

Due to the colder winters, many well known trees of the southern Pacific Northwest are unknown in Southeast Alaska, such as Douglas fir (*Pseudotsuga menziesii* (Mirb.) Franco), western white pine (*Pinus monticola* Douglas ex D.Don), arbutus or madrone (*Arbutus menziesii* Pursh), and Pacific dogwood (*Cornus nuttallii* Audubon). Modern Tlingit speakers are often familiar with these trees through both travel and introduction by horticultural planting, but they report no traditional names for them, and Tlingits do not seem to have traded for them in the past. In contrast, the paucity of good *laax* (western redcedar) timber and bark meant that Tlingit people would traditionally trade for this wood with more southerly groups, particularly with the Coast Tsimshian (*Ts’ootsxán*) and Haida (*Deikeenaa*). Such trade is still in a sense maintained today through the harvest of *laax* in southern Southeast Alaska for traditional uses in northern Southeast Alaska, but international boundaries largely prevent importation from Canadian lands. A similar trade existed for *s’áks* (Pacific yew) before the introduction of firearms obsoleted the bow. *Laax* was replaced in the north with *sheey* (Sitka spruce) for housing and transportation construction, with the large “war canoe” imported whole from the Haida, though the occasional log of *laax* washed up on a beach was always put to good use.

Aside from the crabapple *x’áax*⁶ noted earlier, there are essentially no fruit trees in Southeast Alaska. Berry bushes are however numerous and widely

act genus. Other genera applied to this species include *Cupressus*, *Chamaecyparis*, and *Xanthocyparis*.

5. Because this tree provides an excellent hard but bendable wood, it was extensively used for bowery and hence the word *s’áks* also means “bow”.
6. Often known as *Lingít x’áax* “Tlingit apple” in contrast to European apples now called *x’áax*.

varied. The generic term for berry is *tléikw*; this word was extended after European contact to cover all fruit but its basic referent remains as “berry”. The most iconic types of berries in Tlingit culture are *shákw* ~ *shíkw* (*Fragaria chiloensis* subsp. *pacifica* (L.) Mill., “beach strawberry”), *tleikwyádi* ~ *tléikw yádi* (*Rubus leucodermis* Dougl. ex Torr. & A.Gray, “western raspberry”), *was’x’aan tléiḡu* or *tléikw wás’i* (*Rubus spectabilis* Pursh, “salmonberry”), and *kanat’á* (*Vaccinium ovalifolium* Sm., “Alaskan blueberry”). There are many other berry species harvested by the Tlingit, including *ch’eeḡ*’ (*Rubus parviflorus* Nutt., “thimbleberry”), *k’inchéiyi tléiḡu* (*Rosa nutkana* K. Presl, “rosehip”), *kaxwéix* (*Viburnum edule* (Michx.) Raf., “highbush cranberry”), *tleikatánk* (*Vaccinium parvifolium* Sm., “red huckleberry”), *xákw’ee* (*Shepherdia canadensis* (L.) Nutt., “soapberry”),⁷ and *neigóon* (*Rubus arcticus* L., “nagoonberry”), among many others. Today berries are often preserved according to European methods, but traditional sun-dried and smoked cakes (*at kaxúkw*) are also still produced.

The primary food sources of the Coastal Tlingit are the five species of western Pacific salmon: *t’á* (*Oncorhynchus tshawytscha* Walbaum, “king, chinook”), *ḡaat* (*O. nerka* Walbaum, “sockeye, red”), *look* (*O. kisutch* Walbaum, “coho, silver”), *téel’* (*O. keta* Walbaum, “dog, chum”), and *cháas’* (*O. gorbuscha* Walbaum, “humpy, pink”).⁸ The gathering of salmon during the summer and fall necessi-

7. Not locally known by the Chinook Jargon borrowing “soapollie”, unlike further south.
8. The genus name is from Greek ὄγκος *ónkos* “bend, hook” and ῥύγχος *rhúnkhos* “snout, beak”, referring to the hooked upper jaw or “kype” of breeding males. The species names are from the Russian names чавыча /tʃaˈvi.tʃa/ (< Itelmen *čevičev*), нерка /n’erka/ (dial. нярка /n’arka/ < Proto-Samoyedic *n’arka “red”, e.g. Nganasan *n’ora*), кижуч /k’izutʃ/ (also кизуч /k’izutʃ/ < Itelmen *kizuez*), кета /k’eta/ (< Evenki *ke:ta* or Even *qæta* < Chukchi-Koryak, e.g. Chukchi *qetaqet*), and горбуша /gor’bu.ʃa/ (< Russian горб /gorb/ “hump”). The English name “chinook” is from the Chinook people at the mouth of the Columbia River, and “king” refers to its value. The name “coho” is of unknown origin, but the *Oxford English Dictionary*, 2nd. ed. (*OED2*) has the following early citations:

1859 *British Colonist* (Victoria, B.C.) 29 July 1/2 Lastly, there is the genus known by the Indian name of cocouse a hybrid bastard sort of fish, half trout, half salmon. 1869 *Mainland Guardian* (New Westminster, B.C.) 25 Sept. 2/1 The second of salmon in class is the Cohose, which comes in September and continues to run until November.

The alternate name “silver” refers to its bright silver skin. The name “sockeye” seems to derive from a reanalysis of something like /sʌ.kaj/, derived from Halkomelem *sθákəy* /sθə.kəj/, with the earliest citation in *OED2* being “1887 GOODE *Amer. Fishes* 481 On Frazer River, where this species is the most important Salmon, it is known as the ‘Suk-kegh’, ‘Saw-quai’ or ‘Suck-eye’”. Its alternate name “red” refers to the dark color of the fish’s flesh. The name “chum” is from Chinook Jargon *čəm* or *tsəm* “spot” which is originally from [ʔ], and

tated frequent moves from one stream or river to another as each run played out. During this period small family groups would build a smokehouse near some number of productive salmon streams, and the group would engage in the strenuous work of fishing, preparing, and smoking salmon for winter consumption. When the last runs ended in late fall, these groups would return to a winter village where they would dwell together with their extended families in the great communal houses (*hít*, see §2.2.1) until spring.

Other major sources of food are likewise mostly littoral and pelagic, such as *tšaa* (*Phoca vitulina* L., “hair seal”), *saak* (*Thaleichthys pacificus* Richardson, “hooligan”)⁹, *yaaw* (*Clupea pallasii* Valenciennes, “herring”), *cháatl* (*Hippoglossus stenolepis* P.J. Schmidt, “halibut”), various kinds of shellfish, and a wide variety of seaweeds and beach grasses. Land mammals include *ḡuwakaan* (*Odocoileus hemionus sitkensis* Merriam, “(Sitka) deer”), *jánwu* (*Oreamnos americanus* Blainville, “mountain goat”), *ḡáx* (*Lepus americanus* Erxleben, “rabbit”), and *s’igeidí* (*Castor canadensis* Kuhl, “beaver”), among others.

The traditional houses or *hít* of the Coastal Tlingit are similar to those of the neighboring Haida and Tsimshian, constructed from large planks of *laax* (“western redcedar”) or in the north of *sheey* (“Sitka spruce”). These houses are of post-and-lintel construction with four carved posts (*gáas*, “housepost”) and two lintels (*kaxyeit* per LHR01:M:57 or *akaxye.ádi* per De Laguna 1972:297). The floor consists of multiple concentric levels (*táax*, “house tier”) going down to a central fire pit, with a large carved screen separating the rearmost part of the house. De Laguna (1972:295–302) offers an extensive description of many houses of the various Gulf Coast *kwáan*, including relatively accurate Tlingit names for various parts of the house. Today nobody lives in traditional houses, having instead completely assimilated to life in typical North American single-family houses or apartments in some of the more urban areas. Nevertheless, having at least one traditional house is a great source of pride for most Coastal Tlingit communities, and the knowledge of building them and maintaining them has not been lost.

Being maritime, the Coastal Tlingit spent much of their life on the water, and early European explorers admired their skills in canoe construction and piloting. The *yaakw* was the traditional dugout canoe, carved from whole *laax* (redcedar)

the name “dog” refers to the enlarged teeth which are reminiscent of the canine teeth of dogs. The name “humpy” refers to the pronounced dorsal hump on males during spawning, and the name “pink” refers to the pale color of its flesh.

9. The usual name of this fish in English is “eulachon” /’u.lə.kən/ or “oolichan” /’u.lɪ.kən/ from Chinook Jargon *úliχən*, however the name “hooligan” /’hu.lɪ.gən/ is used in Alaska.

logs, and then steamed and spread open with stretchers. The term has since been extended to cover any type of boat, today ranging from the traditional canoe through small and large fishing vessels to the huge cruise ships which visit Tlingit waters every summer carrying thousands of inquisitive tourists. Very large ones were usually purchased from the Haida, who were acknowledged as having greater skill in canoe construction as well as having access to larger *laax* logs. The sail *s'ísaa* was unknown to Tlingits before European arrival, but was quickly adopted so that photographs in the late 19th century show Tlingit canoes fitted with masts and square canvas sails. Tlingit people routinely voyaged remarkable distances, travelling as far south as Oregon and as far north as Prince William Sound looking for trade and slaves. Foot travel was largely limited to short hunting or ambush treks through the forest, with only a few trails in the archipelago seeing extensive use. Coastal Tlingit life was and is intensely focused on the water; as Kan (1989) points out [dark vs. light and open water vs. closed forest].

Linguistically the Coastal Tlingit form the majority of the Tlingit speaking population, despite the drastic fall in numbers of speakers since the mid-20th century. The majority of dialect diversity is found among the Coastal Tlingit, particularly in the southern range of *Lingít Aaní*. Despite dialect variation, Coastal Tlingit speakers have little trouble understanding each other, with only lexical differences causing any serious difficulty. Contact between dialects was and is still common, with nearly every Coastal Tlingit speaker being able to recognize other dialects and having a general awareness of where particular speech varieties hail from.

In the past, multilingualism was probably the rule except perhaps in the most central *kwáan* like Angoon, Sitka, and Hoonah. Most Coastal Tlingit speakers have at least passing familiarity with the sound of Haida or Coast Tsimshian, particularly among those from the central and southern areas. Among the Heinyaa *kwáan* there was some degree of bilingualism with Haida, although the decline of both languages probably eliminated bilingualism some time during the mid-20th century. One speaker told me of his grandparents who spoke Tahltan, Haida, and Tlingit, and additionally had some command of Coast Tsimshian, Chinook Jargon, and English. The regular practice of intermarrying with outside groups combined with little linguistic discrimination meant that this sort of family was probably common.

2.1.2. Interior Tlingit

The INTERIOR TLINGIT are those who live on the eastern side of the Coast Mountains. In Tlingit they term themselves *Daḱká Kḱwáan* (*daak-ká kwáan* |inland-HSFC people|), in opposition to the term *Eil'ká Kḱwáan* for the Coastal mentioned in §2.1.1. Some of the *Daḱká Kḱwáan* represent the ancestors Tlingits who migrated up the rivers to settle with their Athabaskan (*Gunanaa*) trade partners, and others represent the ancestors of those Athabaskans. In fact there is no real division between them, with everyone today identifying as Tlingit with some variable amount of Athabaskan heritage.

[[Environment.]]

[[Foods.]]

[[Housing.]]

[[Travel.]]

[[Linguistic situation.]]

2.2. Traditional culture

Tlingit traditional culture is relatively well documented in the remarkably voluminous anthropological literature on the Tlingit. The essential sources were mentioned at the beginning of this chapter, and it is needless to repeat them here. The basic concepts are the division into two moieties, further subdivision into matrilineal exogamous clans (*naa*), and subdivision into house (*hít*) lineages. Overlaid atop this system is the geographical system of *kwáan*, geopolitical units based around groups of settlements and surrounding territories.

2.2.1. Moiety and clan organization

The whole of Tlingit society¹⁰ is organized into two moieties.¹¹ One side is routinely labelled *Yéil* “Raven”, and the other is variously known as *Gooch* “Wolf” or *Ch'áak* “Eagle”. *Gooch* is probably the older term, with *Ch'áak* coming from the parallel Haida system, which maps inversely to the Tlingit one [[cite]]. There is no abstract term for moiety, although there are certain conventional names for the two moieties. [[names of each moiety]] In English the terms “Raven”

10. Except the *Neix.ádi*, of Saanyaa Kḱwáan, for which see below.

11. The anthropological term *moiety* (pronounced /moj.ə.ti/) is from Anglo-Norman and Middle French *moitié* “half part”, thence from Latin *mediētās* “middle part” coined by Cicero for Plato’s *μεσότης* “middle”.

and “Eagle” are the typical labels for each moiety, and the abstract term is often “side”. Thus in English a Tlingit elder of a Wolf/Eagle moiety might refer to “my uncles on the Raven side”, and when planning for a potlatch one might say “we will greet the other side and then let them speak to us”.

Beneath each moiety are a large number of clans, perhaps thirty on either side. Some of the clans are widely acknowledged as being older than others, and there are some groups which are well known to have split from other clans. A typical example is the Naanyaa.aayí clan which is said to have migrated down the Stikine River to the settle in the Wrangell area. The S'iknaḡ.ádi clan is said to have either come down with them or perhaps split from them at some point during the migration. The Kayaashkiditaan is also closely associated, said to have formed from the Naanyaa.aayí when a particular house was so full that members had to sleep on platforms (*kayáash*) on the rafters, later moving into a new house and forming their own separate clan. Another example from the other moiety is the *Kak'weidi* which was (and still is) a subgroup of the Deisheetaan which dwelt in a village in Basket Bay (*Kák'w*) until its destruction. Depending on the particular individual, the *Kak'weidi* may be described as a separate clan or as a convenient name for a house group of the larger Deisheetaan clan. For an analysis of the various Tlingit clan names, see §4.15.2 on page 83.

Each clan is composed of one or more matrilineal house groups called *hit* “house” or *hittaaan* “house group” (see §4.15.2). Historically these were quite literally a group of people in a single house, often 100 or more dwelling all in the same house in a winter village.

2.3. Regional *kwáan* organization

Crosscutting the moiety and clan system is a separate organization system which is based around the *kwáan* (< *ku-θ-θ-ʔáan* |INDH.O-ZCNJ-CL[-D, θ, -I]-dwell| “people dwell”), a traditional geopolitical unit. A *kwáan* centers around a few villages, and extends through the traditional territories possessed by the various clans which are resident in those villages. Each *kwáan* has a name which may be derived from a particular village (e.g. *Sheet'ká*, *K'éix'*), a major geographical feature (e.g. *Shtax'héen*, *Xootsnoowú*), or some attribute of the people (e.g. *Gunaxoo*, *Jilkaat*). Because I make reference to various *kwáan* throughout the grammar in various contexts, I include a summary of the various *kwáan* and their relationships here.

2.3.1. Maritime

The kwáan whose territories are in the saltwater regions west of the coastal mountains.

2.3.1.1. Tongass

The Taant'á Kwáan.

2.3.1.2. Southern

The Saanyaa Kwáan, Heinyaa Kwáan, T'akjik'aan Kwáan, and Kooyu Kwáan.

2.3.1.3. Transitional

The Shtax'héen Kwáan and the K'éix' Kwáan.

2.3.1.4. Northern

The Xootsnoowú (Xoodzidaa) Kwáan, Sheet'ká Kwáan, Xunaa Kwáan, S'awdaan Kwáan, T'aakú Kwáan, Áak'w Kwáan, Jilkoot Kwáan, Jilkaat Kwáan, Gunaxoo Kwáan, Laaxaayík Kwáan, and Galyáx Kwáan.

2.3.2. Interior

The kwáan whose territories are east of the coastal mountains. The Aatlein Kwáan, Deisleen Kwáan, and Tagish Kwáan.

2.4. Language status

2.4.1. Population decline

2.4.2. Language death phenomena

2.4.3. Community attitudes

2.4.4. Revitalization efforts

3. *Sounds*

Although Tlingit has attracted researchers since the mid-19th century, there has been remarkably little done on the phonetics of Tlingit. Miller (1930) made the first attempt to address some phonetic characteristics of Tlingit speech, working from a phonograph record of Louis Shotridge.¹ Boas appears to have experimented with an oscilloscope in his investigation of Northern Tlingit tone, but the only result was one comment (see §3.2.2.3.1) and three graphs in his *Grammatical notes on the language of the Tlingit Indians* (B17). Maddieson, Smith, & Bessell (2001) present the only other serious study of Tlingit phonetics, and this is limited purely to segmental phenomena with a short discussion of tone. As such, one can fairly say that the sound system of Tlingit remains sorely underdocumented, despite being one of the more unusual and intriguing sound systems among the world's languages.

I will use the IPA rather than an orthography throughout this chapter for precision and accuracy. In §3.8 on page 59 I discuss the various orthographies and transcription systems that have been used for Tlingit, and present the orthography which I use throughout the rest of this grammar. The IPA is poorly adapted to languages in which affricates are a unitary phoneme, but for consistency's sake I use the clumsier IPA digraphs rather than the more traditional Americanist symbols ⟨č⟩, ⟨λ⟩, and the like.

The consonant inventory of Tlingit is largely invariable between different dialects, except for the bilabial nasal ^ʷ/m/, the presence or absence of ^ʔ/ʔ^w/ and ^ʔ/h^w/, and the recently extinct [†]/uq/. With this variability, there are between 44 and 48 consonants in the language. The four-vowel system of /i/, /e/, /a/, and /u/ is also largely consistent among the dialects, with only the Carcross and Teslin communities participating in a partial merger of /a/ with /e/, the result sounding something like [ə] or [ɛ]. Vowels have length in all dialects, and have

1. I have been as yet unable to locate this recording, which was apparently made by the Victor company, "Record No. Bve 42429-1" (Miller 1930:47, fn. 2). If found, it would be the earliest intelligible recording of Tlingit speech, excluding some wax cylinders of very poor quality.

tone systems in all but the Tongass dialect which instead has a register system that reflects the source of the tone systems in the other dialects.

3.1. Consonants

Like most languages of the Pacific Northwest of North America, and like most languages in the Na-Dene family, Tlingit has a relatively large inventory of consonants. Table 3.1 on page 42 presents the Tlingit consonant system schematically. Depending on what phonemes are included, the Tlingit inventory ranges between 44 and 48 consonants. The size of Tlingit's consonant inventory is large enough to have merited a mention in Mithun's compendium on the indigenous languages of North America (Mithun 1999:15), but in the global context it is easily surpassed by !Xóõ and Ubykh, among others.

Tlingit has a number of typological peculiarities in its sound system. It has four unique consonants unknown elsewhere, a nearly complete contrast between ejective affricates and fricatives, a larger than usual number of lateral stops and affricates, and a large inventory of stops and affricates articulated back of the velar place. In terms of lacunae, Tlingit has a striking lack of voiced *[l] despite having a variety of laterals, an impoverished inventory of nasals despite the numerous places of articulation for oral stops, and completely lacks labials except in a few communilects (see §3.1.5.1).

3.1.1. Inventory

Tlingit features a three-way contrast between plain, aspirated, and ejective occlusives, and a two-way contrast between plain and ejective fricatives except for the lack of *[ʃ] contrasting with /ʃ/. Ejective fricatives are extremely rare among human languages, and Tlingit has four phonemic ejective fricatives which are found in no other attested language, namely /x'/, /x^w/, /χ'/, and /χ^w/ (Maddieson, p.c. 2009). This series exhibits another phonemic contrast of labialization (a.k.a. rounding) which is contrastive for all posterior consonants.² The POSTERIOR consonants are those which are articulated rearward of the palatal and lateral places of articulation, and the ANTERIOR consonants are those articulated forward of the velar place of articulation. The anterior consonants are the only group including affricates, which is another distinction between the two areas of articulation.

2. This depends on the dialect or idiolect, since some have no labialization contrast for /ʔ/ or /h/, and the consonant †/uq/ is extinct today.

There are four consonants which are marginal in the language. The bilabial nasal stop $^{\%}/m/$ only occurs in the two Interior communilects of Carcross (Tagish) and Teslin. It is an allomorphophone of $/w/$ that occurs in certain words, e.g. $^{\%}/m\tilde{a}:/$ for $/wa:/$ “how” and $^{\%}/\gamma\text{amsik}^{\text{h}u}:/$ for $/\gamma\text{awsik}^{\text{h}u}:/$ “he knows it”. This sound may be a development due to language contact with Athabaskan languages like Tagish and Southern Tutchone which have this phoneme, or it may represent a Pre-Tlingit $^*/m/$ which was preserved only in this area, perhaps again due to contact influences. In those dialects which lack $^{\%}/m/$ the Tlingit consonant inventory is entirely without labials, a remarkable fact even among labial-poor Na-Dene languages.

Two other marginal consonants are $^{\%}/\gamma^w/$ and $^{\%}/h^w/$. It should be noted that $\langle h^w \rangle$ does not represent a voiceless labial-velar approximant $^*/\Lambda/$, but is instead a true labialized voiceless glottal fricative with no velarization, something like a very approximate $[\phi]$. The two marginal consonants are not restricted to a particular dialect, but instead seem to be scattered idiolectically across the various dialects. They may be innovations which complete the labialization contrasts of posterior consonants, or they may be retentions which have been lost for other speakers. In any case, it is not uncommon that two speakers of the same communilect may vary in their use of these sounds. When considered as allophones they are relatively frequent in labialized/rounded environments, but many speakers do not seem to perceive them as distinct sounds.

The sound $^{\dagger}/\omega/$ is a non-labialized voiced velar approximant. It has been extinct since the mid-20th century, but can be found in recordings made in the 1960s of a few speakers who retained it, and it appears in some early transcriptions of Tlingit as variously $\langle \gamma \rangle$, $\langle g \rangle$, $\langle r \rangle$, or Cyrillic $\langle \text{r} \rangle$. It has undergone a conditioned split, merging with $/w/$ in rounded environments and with $/j/$ otherwise. In linguistic publications the symbol $\langle \tilde{y} \rangle$ (also earlier $\langle \text{y} \rangle$, $\langle \text{y} \rangle$, and $\langle \text{y} \rangle$) represents this sound, and it is retained to explain alternations between $/j/$ and $/w/$, thus serving as a sort of archiphoneme in underlying phonological and morphological forms. Because of prior transcriptions of this sound as $\langle \gamma \rangle$ it is often called “gamma”, e.g. by Dauenhauer & Dauenhauer (DD02).

3.1.2. Contrasts

There are a number of systematic contrasts in the Tlingit consonant inventory. Among the stops and affricates there is a three-way contrast between plain, aspirated, and ejective. Thus for the nonlabialized uvular stops there are $/q\acute{a}k^w/$

	<i>anterior</i>					<i>posterior</i>					
	<i>bilabial</i>	<i>alveolar</i>	<i>postalveolar</i>	<i>palatal</i>	<i>lateral</i>	<i>velar</i>	<i>labial-velar</i>	<i>uvular</i>	<i>labial-uvular</i>	<i>glottal</i>	<i>labial-glottal</i>
<i>plain stop</i>		t				k	k ^w	q	q ^w	ʔ	ʔ ^(ʔ^w)
<i>aspirated stop</i>		t ^h				k ^h	k ^{hw}	q ^h	q ^{hw}		
<i>ejective stop</i>		t'				k'	k' ^w	q'	q' ^w		
<i>plain affricate</i>		ts	tʃ		tʃ						
<i>aspirated affricate</i>		ts ^h	tʃ ^h		tʃ ^h						
<i>ejective affricate</i>		ts'	tʃ'		tʃ'						
<i>plain fricative</i>		s	ʃ		ʃ	x	x ^w	χ	χ ^w	h	ʔ ^(h^w)
<i>ejective fricative</i>		s'			ʃ'	x'	x' ^w	χ'	χ' ^w		
<i>nasal stop</i>	% ^(m)	n									
<i>approximant</i>				j		†(uɣ)	w				

Table 3.1: Consonantal phonemes of Tlingit in IPA. % dialectal, ʔ marginal, † extinct.

“tree spine; dry and hard”, /q^hák^w/ “basket; arch”, and /q'ak^w/ “western screech-owl (*Megascops kennicottii* Elliot 1867)” although tone differs on the last.

Minimal pairs for any particular contrast are difficult to collect because the consonant inventory is so large. Thus although /t^há/ “sleep” contrasts with /t'á/ “king salmon (*Oncorhynchus tshawytscha* Walbaum 1792)”, there is no */tá/. There is /tá:/ “weasel (*Mustela* ? L. 1758)” with a long vowel however. Because of the paucity of minimal pairs, I will often ignore certain phonological features like tone, vowel length, vowel quality, onset consonant, or coda consonant when illustrating contrasts. Such examples are not technically minimal pairs, but can be termed CONTRASTIVE PAIRS.

Aspiration is neutralized in the syllable coda so that there is only a two-way contrast between plain and ejective stops and affricates, e.g. [ʔ...]

3.1.2.1. Aspiration

3.1.2.1.1. Final release vs. aspiration

3.1.2.2. Ejection

3.1.2.3. Labialization and rounding

3.1.2.4. Alveolar nasal variation

3.1.3. Articulation

3.1.3.1. Places of articulation

Palatographic and linguographic evidence.

3.1.3.1.1. Stops

3.1.3.1.2. Affricates

In Tlingit phonology, as with its Na-Dene relatives, affricates behave much like stops; together the two are sometimes called PLOSIVES. This term is distinct from the IPA usage, where “plosive” is equivalent to “stop”. Instead “plosive” is a superset of the stops and the affricates. The grouping is motivated by the shared distribution of features between the two classes, most importantly the syllable-initial three-way distinction between plain, aspirated, and ejective manners of articulation.

Affricates are not accorded a place in the IPA system of organizing sounds, since phonetically affricates are a sequence of stop and fricative which may be heterorganic. For Tlingit is convenient and phonologically sound to assign the affricates to places in common with their final fricatives. Thus the affricates of the /ts/ type – namely /ts/, /ts^h/, and /ts’/ – can be assigned to the alveolar place alongside /s/. The affricates of the /tʃ/ type can be assigned to the postalveolar place alongside /ʃ/, and the affricates of the /tɬ/ type can be assigned to the lateral place alongside /ɬ/.

The three affricate series contrast with each other, thus /ts^ha:/ “harbor seal (*Phoca vitulina richardsi* Gray)” contrasts with /tɬ^há:/ “mother” and /tʃ^ha:/ “brother-in-law!” (address).

3.1.3.1.3. Fricatives

Fricatives are articulated as far anterior as the alveolar place, and as far posterior as the glottal place.

3.1.3.1.4. Laterals

I have noted a tendency for laterals to be articulated more dorsally near the velar place of articulation, as well as the more common coronal and alveolar articulation. Thus the plain lateral affricate /tʎ/ is sometimes realized as a dorsal [cʎ] or [kʎ]. The variation seems to be idiolectal and random rather than geographic or social. Krause apparently noticed a similar sound, as witnessed by his occasional use of ⟨kl⟩ instead of his more usual ⟨tl⟩. Compare for example ⟨kled⟩ “Schnee” for /tʎe:t/ “snow” (Krause 1885:372) and ⟨klēk⟩ “nein” for /tʎe:kʰ/ “no” (Krause 1885:370) with ⟨tlirā tātke⟩ “vorgestern” for /tʎiuʎa: tʰa:tké/ “day before yesterday” (Krause 1885:377) and ⟨tlēn⟩ “groß” for /tʎʰe:n/ “big, large” (Krause 1885:361).

3.1.3.1.5. Nasals

In most Tlingit dialects there is only one nasal, the alveolar nasal /n/. This is unsurprisingly articulated at the same place as the plain alveolar stop /t/.

In the few communilects which have /m/ it is articulated bilabially with complete closure of both lips. This would be unremarkable except that most Tlingit dialects *lack* bilabial consonants such as /m/. See §3.1.5.1 for further details.

- 3.1.3.1.6. Approximants
- 3.1.3.2. Manners of articulation
- 3.1.3.3. Airflow
- 3.1.4. Ejective fricatives
 - 3.1.4.1. Synchronic analysis
 - 3.1.4.2. Typological comparisons
 - 3.1.4.3. Diachronic hypotheses
- 3.1.5. Rare consonants
 - 3.1.5.1. Dialectal bilabial and the lack of labials
 - 3.1.5.2. Marginal labial glottals
 - 3.1.5.3. Lateral approximant for alveolar nasal

[[Jennie Manton has [l] where everyone else has /n/. Was this idiolectal? Dialectal? A speech impediment? An indication of */l/ → /n/? Or something else entirely?]]

3.1.5.4. Extinct velar approximant

The velar approximant has the particular honor of being termed an extinct phoneme, in that it no longer exists in modern speech but is documented as having previously existed in both transcription and audio recordings. A rough comparison might be with the eventual fate of /ɰ/ in English, which is merging with /w/ in most English dialects.

[[Appearance in Veniaminov’s transcriptions. Examples from Krause, Swanton, Olson. Velten?]]

Aurel Krause distinguished /ɰ/ which he wrote as ⟨r⟩. For example, his pronoun list has ⟨ri⟩ “ihr” and ⟨ri⟩ “euer” (Krause 1885:349), representing the form /ɰi/ for the second person plural independent and possessive pronouns. Another example is Krause’s ⟨ach-ssārī⟩ glossed as “mein Name” (Krause 1885:369) which is clearly /aχ sa:ɰi/ “my name”.

[[Documentation in Tongass Tlingit (wwL78). Existence in Yakutat Tlingit – documentation? Occasional reference in Carcross, e.g. LHR01:M·106.]]

[[Transcription and spectrogram of appearance in Frank Williams’s speech, and in Jennie Manton’s speech.]]

The velar approximant has undergone a conditioned split, having merged with /w/ in rounded environments and with /j/ elsewhere. This split must have started at least earlier than the late 19th century, since Louis Shotridge did not have [†]/ɥ/ according to Boas (B17:10); Boas did however encounter the sound when working with an older speaker of the Stikine *kwáan* (B17:9). Boas cited Swanton’s description of it as meaning that /ɥ/ only occurred in southern dialects (Southern, Transitional), but his citation is peculiar because Swanton says only that /ɥ/ changes to /w/ due to its “weakness” (S11:165). Perhaps Boas was informed directly by Swanton, and erroneously cited Swanton’s publication rather than his personal communication.

The following examples are adapted from Williams, Williams, & Leer (WWL78:8), where Leer discusses the status of /ɥ/ (his ⟨ɥ⟩) in the now extinct Tongass Tlingit dialect spoken by Frank and Emma Williams (see §3.5.4). His “conservative Northern Tlingit” represents the speech of those Northern Tlingit individuals who still retain /ɥ/ as an underlying phoneme which has two realizations of [j] in unrounded environments and [w] in rounded environments. Leer’s “innovative Northern Tlingit” represents the speech of Northern Tlingit speakers who have fully split the phoneme such that it no longer exists even as an underlying phoneme with two realizations, and thus both /j/ and /w/ are completely unpredictable and any alternations must be memorized.

(4) Examples of the phonetic split of /ɥ/ into /j/ and /w/.

a. Tongass Tlingit

/ɥak'é:/

θ-θ-ÿa-k'ei

3O-ZCNJ-CL[-D, θ, +I]-good

“he is good”

b. conservative Northern Tlingit, [-rnd]

/jak'é:/

θ-θ-ÿa-k'ei

3O-ZCNJ-CL[-D, θ, +I]-good

“he is good”

- c. innovative Northern Tlingit, [-rnd]
 /jak'é:/
 0-0-ÿa-k'ei
 3O-ZCNJ-CL[-D, 0, +I]-good
 “he is good”
- d. Tongass Tlingit
 /tu uɥi:t/
 du ÿeet
 3H.PSS son
 “his son”
- e. conservative Northern Tlingit, [+rnd]
 /tu wi:t/
 du ÿeet
 3H.PSS son
 “his son”
- f. innovative Northern Tlingit, [+rnd]
 /tu ji:t/
 du yeet
 3H.PSS son
 “his son”

Given that /uɥ/ is gone in the speech of most (all?) Northern Tlingit speakers, there is a question as to why linguists maintain the morphophonological distinction of ÿ versus w and y (/j/) in the underlying morphological system. The reason is because the sound still represents a sort of “archiphoneme”, i.e. that it represents a morphophonological constituent which accounts for otherwise unexplainable alternation in sounds.

(5) Alternation between /w/ and /j/ in the possessive suffix -yí.

- a. /aχ tu:wú/
 aχ tú-yí
 1SG.PSS inside-PSS
 “my insides; my thoughts, my feelings”
- b. /a k'i:jí/
 a k'i-yí
 3N.PSS base-PSS
 “its base”

In the example above it can be seen that the possessive suffix -yí has a rounded form /wú/ after a word ending in a round vowel (i.e. /u/), but has an unrounded form /jí/ after a word ending in a nonround vowel (i.e. /i/, /e/, /a/). This alternation between rounded and unrounded forms did not exist in Tongass Tlingit, nor presumably in any other Tlingit dialect which retained the original /u/ as a phoneme. It does appear in the “conservative” dialects but would be predictable to speakers since they retain the underlying phoneme and have regular alternation between /w/ and /j/ anywhere that /u/ occurred previously. In “innovative” dialects the regular alternation between /w/ and /j/ does not occur, and hence the alternation must be memorized for specific morphemes like the possessive suffix.

It seems that today the velar approximant is entirely extinct as a surface phoneme. I have not heard it at all in the speech of the oldest living speakers of any dialect. Some speakers still occasionally produce [u] as an allophone of /w/ in less labialized environments, but seem to be no more aware of it than English speakers are of unaspirated [t] in /st/.

[[Examples of occurrence as an allophone. Spectrogram of appearance in Forrest De Witt’s speech. Anecdotal evidence from Harold Jacobs.]]

3.2. Vowels

The Tlingit vowel system is quite simple in comparison to the consonant system. There are four basic vowels, and length is contrastive in all dialects. The Southern, Transitional, and Northern dialects all have tone, whereas the Tongass dialect had a register system which reflects the source of tone in the other dialects.

3.2.1. Vowel inventory

		<i>short</i>			<i>long</i>		
		<i>front</i>	<i>central</i>	<i>back</i>	<i>front</i>	<i>central</i>	<i>back</i>
<i>high</i>		í		ú	í:		ú:
		é			é:		
			á				á:
<i>low</i>		i		u	i:		u:
		e			e:		
			a				a:

Table 3.2: Northern Tlingit vowels in IPA.

3.2.1.1. Minimal pairs

3.2.1.2. Formant structure

3.2.1.3. Variation

3.2.1.4. Diachronic issues

3.2.2. Suprasegmental phenomena

3.2.2.1. Length

3.2.2.2. Nasalization and lack thereof

3.2.2.3. Tone

Boas [cite] was the first to recognize that tone (his “pitch”) was a phonemic phenomenon in Tlingit. Before him researchers like Swanton had analyzed tone as some sort of stress system. Consider that Veniaminov, Krause, and Swanton all spoke languages with stress accent, namely Russian, German, and English. It is unsurprising then that they did not recognize tone. [Sapir sends his “talented chinaman”, Fang- Kuei Li, to work on Chipewyan and discover the Athabaskan tone systems.]

	<i>Tongass</i>	<i>Southern</i>	<i>Northern</i>
<i>upstep</i>	V	Ṽ	Ṽ
<i>non-upstep</i>	V	Ṽ [%] (~Ṽ)	V
	V ^h	Ṽ:	V:
	V'	Ṽ:	Ṽ:
<i>upstep</i>	V:	Ṽ:	Ṽ:
<i>non-upstep</i>	V:	Ṽ:	V:

Table 3.3: Tone correspondences between Tlingit dialects. % = only in Henya subdialect.

Each Tlingit dialect has a different tone system, or in the case of Southern Tlingit, two different tone systems. The correspondences between the different tone systems is given in table 3.3. The Northern dialect has a two-way contrast between low (unmarked) and high (marked) tones, a relatively simple system which may be turning into a sort of pitch accent system at least in nominal phonology. The Transitional dialect is not clear, but seems to have variously a two-way system or a three-way system with an unmarked middle tone. The Southern system must be divided into two subdialects, Sanya and Henya, on the basis of the differences between the two tone systems. In both there are high, low, and falling tones, but the distribution is slightly different. The Tongass dialect does not have a tone system, but instead has a four-way register system which appears to be more conservative than any of the tone systems.

3.2.2.3.1. Northern dialect

The Northern dialect has a two-way contrast between low and high tone. Boas was the first to fully understand this, as can be seen in his sketch grammar (B17:11):

Vowels have well-marked pitch. They are high, low, or indifferent. The actual difference between high and low pitch is not very great, the ratio of vibrations being about 14:15... The high pitch is always accompanied by greater stress, but, according to Mr. Shotridge's feeling, the pitch is essential, the stress accidental; for when words

were intentionally mispronounced, with stress accent on a low-pitch vowel, he interpreted them regularly according to the pitch values of the vowels.

3.2.2.3.1.1. Tone in the verb

3.2.2.3.1.2. Extraverbal pitch accent

Monosyllabic contrasts. Multisyllabic phenomena. Nominal suffix tone alternation.

3.2.2.3.1.3. Acoustic properties of tone

Acoustics in monosyllables. Acoustics in multisyllables: final high, penultimate high.

3.2.2.3.2. Southern dialect

Previous descriptions. Acoustic properties.

3.2.2.3.3. Transitional dialect

Three-way transcriptions. Acoustic properties. Possible description.

3.2.2.4. Tongass vowel system

Leer's description. Problems. Acoustic analysis.

3.3. Word structure

3.3.1. Syllables

3.3.1.1. Consonant clusters

Syllable initial. Syllable final.

3.3.1.2. Fricative syllables

Syllabic fricatives. Acoustic properties. Fricative syllable assignment.

3.3.2. Word boundary phenomena

3.3.2.1. Word-initial onset filling

If the initial syllable of a word has no onset consonant then the onset is filled by a glottal stop [ʔ]. Formally this can be represented by the following process:

(6) Word-initial Onset Filling: $V(C...) \rightarrow ʔV(C...) / \#_$

There are quite a few morphemes in Tlingit which have no onset consonant in their initial syllables. This process accounts for the appearance of glottal stops at the beginning of free morphemes which do not exist when the morphemes occur in compounds, as clitics, and in other situations. There are however some morphemes which have underlying word-initial glottal stops, particularly a large variety of verb roots. The following example shows that surface forms without the glottal stop are ungrammatical, despite not being in a word-initial position.

(7) Morpheme (verb root) with underlying initial glottal stop.

- a. /hí:n awsiʔát/
 [hí:n ʔaw.si.ʔát']
 héen a-ÿu-Ø-si-ʔát'
 water 3O-PFV-3S-CL[-D, s, +I]-cold
 “he cooled water” (NS73:51)
- b. * [hí:n ʔaw.si.át']
- c. * [hí:n ʔaw.si.ját']

This process helps in determining where word boundaries occur, determining the status of morphemes as affixes versus clitics, and in sorting out compounding phenomena, among other things. In careful speech most speakers are likely to employ this process, but this is not always the case in casual or fast speech, where instead it is unpredictably ignored. The following example demonstrates this variation. In the first utterance, the process applies to both words. But in the second it is only applied utterance initially and not to the second word, consequently the second word is resyllabified such that it picks up the coda consonant of the previous word.

(8) Careful vs. relaxed speech and word-initial onset filling.

- a. careful
 /aχ í:f/
 [ʔaχ ʔi:f]
 1SG.PSS father
 “my father”
- b. relaxed
 /aχ í:f/
 [ʔa χí:f]
 1SG.PSS father
 “my father”

The variation in word-initial onset filling is reliable enough that it can be used to determine the cliticness or affixness of many morphemes. An example is the meaningless base =*ee* which is used with postpositional pronominals as described in §4.10.1.3.

- (9) a. /aʃ=i:-n/
 [ʔaʃ ʔi:n]
 3PRX=BASE-INSTR
 “with him (proximate)”
- b. /aʃ=i:-n/
 [ʔa ʃi:n]
 3PRX=BASE-INSTR
 “with him (proximate)”

There are several pronominal object prefixes in the verb which have no onset consonant, namely second singular *i-*, third proximate *ash-*, the third person allomorph *a-*, indefinite nonhuman *at-*, and partitive *aa-*. The application of word-initial onset filling to verbs can be used to show what elements that occur left of these prefixes are proclitics rather than prefixes, an issue discussed further in §8.4.17.

3.4. Phonotactics and phonological processes

3.4.1. Consonants not occurring in verbs

3.4.2. Sequences

3.4.2.1. Typologically unusual sequences

Sequences of two ejective obstruents are not unknown in Tlingit, although they are relatively uncommon. They usually occur at syllable boundaries as the result of compounding, as in the following example. [[Need a spectrogram.]]

- (10) ʔak'itʃ'tʃ'i:ni
 ʔak'i:tʃ-tʃ'i:n-ɥí
 occiput-ribbon-PSS
 “long feathers on the back of its head (of merganser)” (LHR01:T.48)

Such sequences are not reduced in any manner, nor is there an anaptyctic vowel inserted. Instead, the speaker simply articulates two ejective obstruents in a row, but with continuous closure of the glottis between the two articulations. [[Doesn't always occur across syllable boundaries, find an example otherwise.]]

3.4.2.2. Disallowed sequences

3.4.2.3. Rare sequences

3.4.3. Labialization spread

3.4.3.1. Consonantal labialization

3.4.3.2. Vowel rounding

- (11) a. /sak^wné:n/
 [sʌk^wné:n]
 “bread” (NSDL76)
 b. /sukné:n/
 [sʊk^wné:n]
 “bread” (LHR01:T.59)

- 3.4.4. Delabialization
 - 3.4.4.1. Consonantal delabialization
 - 3.4.4.2. Vowel unrounding
- 3.4.5. Tone sandhi
 - 3.4.5.1. Sandhi vs. pitch accent
- 3.4.6. Denasalization
- 3.4.7. Prenasalization in compounds
- 3.4.8. Consonant assimilation
- 3.4.9. Lexical alternations
 - 3.4.9.1. Fricative alternations
 - 3.4.9.2. Obstruent alternations
 - 3.4.9.3. Place alternations
 - 3.4.9.4. Vowel alternations

3.5. Dialectology

3.5.1. Northern dialect

3.5.1.1. Archipelago subdialect

Outer communilects (Angoon, Sitka). Inner comunilects (Chilkat, Hoonah, Auke, Taku). Speculations about Sumdum.

3.5.1.2. Gulf Coast subdialect

Neighboring languages (Eyak, Ahtna, Sugpiaq).

3.5.1.3. Interior subdialect

Atlin communilect. Teslin and Carcross communilects. Neighboring languages (Tagish, Southern Tutchone).

[[From Dauenhauer & Dauenhauer (DD87:314)]]

[I]t is probably more likely that the present day Tlingit population of interior British Columbia and Yukon derives not from an original group that stayed behind, but from a coastal group that continued the migration back into the Interior at a much later date. The basis for this theory is primarily linguistic: there is very little difference between Interior Tlingit and Central Coast Tlingit, whereas if the Interior group had stayed behind since time immemorial, and had not shared in the migration to the coast, we would expect major dialect variation – at least as great as between Northern and Southern Tlingit, and probably even greater than between Tongass Tlingit and all other dialects.

3.5.2. Transitional dialect

Stikine communilect. Kake communilect. Possibility of Telegraph communilect per Pat Moore. Neighboring languages (Tahltan, Ts'ets'aut?).

3.5.3. Southern dialect

3.5.3.1. Sanya subdialect

3.5.3.2. Henya subdialect

3.5.3.3. Speculations about communilects

3.5.4. Tongass dialect

Neighboring languages (Haida, Coast Tsimshian, Nis̄ga'a, Ts'ets'aut).

3.6. Borrowing and adaptive phonology

- 3.6.1. Labial accomodation
- 3.6.2. Voiced lateral accomodation
- 3.6.3. Voicing accomodation
- 3.6.4. Accent conversion
- 3.6.5. Loanword inventories
 - 3.6.5.1. Northwest Coast languages
 - 3.6.5.2. Athabaskan languages
 - 3.6.5.3. Russian
 - 3.6.5.4. Chinook Jargon
 - 3.6.5.5. English

3.7. Prosody and intonation

- 3.7.1. Intonation
 - 3.7.1.1. Interactions between intonation and tone
 - 3.7.1.2. Declarative intonation
 - 3.7.1.3. Question intonation

3.8. Writing

3.8.1. Transcription systems

3.8.1.1. Emmons

3.8.1.2. Swanton

3.8.1.3. Boas

3.8.1.4. Frederica de Laguna 1

3.8.1.5. Naish and Story

3.8.1.6. Frederica de Laguna 2

3.8.1.7. Leer

Tongass system. Dissertation system. Current system.

3.8.2. Archaic orthographies

3.8.2.1. Veniaminov

3.8.2.2. Kelly and Willard

3.8.3. Modern orthographies

3.8.3.1. Naish and Story

Naish and Story 1 (Gospel of John, 1st Noun Dictionary). Naish and Story 2 (Verb dictionary.)

3.8.3.2. Revised popular

3.8.3.3. Canadian

3.8.3.4. E-mail

4. *Nouns*

Like most languages in the Na-Dene family, the noun in Tlingit has been neglected by linguists in favor of the verb. [[Cite Keren Rice.]] Leer (191) only offered passing discussion of the noun since his real focus was verb tense-mood-aspect. Swanton (s11) did address some nominal morphology but Boas (B17) essentially ignored the noun completely. Story (s66) offers the most extensive investigation, which still only amounts to twelve pages out of two hundred. Lexicographically the noun is better represented. The noun dictionary by Leer, Hitch, & Ritter (LHR01) is the most extensive available; although it only considers Interior speech, the forms in Atlin are generally the same as those found in the rest of the Northern dialect. The previous published dictionary by Naish et al. (NSDL76) is essentially a topically organized wordlist. Since nouns are readily approachable in comparison with verbs, there are also a few other community-developed noun dictionaries and word lists in circulation.

Nouns in Tlingit denote entities, times, spaces, physical and abstract relationships, sensations, human artifacts, supernatural entities, and natural objects and phenomena. The category of noun also subsumes a few things which might not be nouns in other languages, such as demonstratives and directions. Nouns can be distinguished from verbs by their lack of tense-aspect-mood, unlike for example nouns in Salishan languages [[cite]]. Some nouns are actually derived from verbs, e.g. *óoxjaa* “wind” and *tu.óoxs*’ “horn” from *O-S-CL[-D, Ø]-ʔoox* “blow” (NS73:32) and *yoo x’atángi* “language” from *(yoo=)x’a-S-CL[+D, Ø]-taan* “S speak” (NS73:202), but what makes these clearly nominal is their ability to take case and other nominal suffixes.

The typical Tlingit noun is monosyllabic, with an inherent lexical tone. For Northern Tlingit this tone might be better characterized as a sort of pitch accent system, in contrast with the complex tone system of the verb root. Multisyllabic nouns are not uncommon, but can often be analyzed as compounds of multiple monosyllabic nouns. In multisyllabic nouns the pitch accent or tone sandhi system is clearly manifest: all noninflectional vowels except the last change to

the default low tone, and the last noninflectional vowel retains its lexical tone. The two examples below demonstrate this with the first showing lexical tone and the second showing the same noun with low tone in a compound.

(12) Pitch accent in noun compounds.

- a. du lak'éech'
 3H.PSS occiput
 "his occiput" (LHR01:T:48)
- b. a lak'ich'ch'éeni
 a lak'éech'-ch'éen-ŷí
 3N.PSS occiput-ribbon-PSS
 "long feathers on the back of its head (of merganser)" (LHR01:T:48)

Nominal inflectional suffixes like case and possession do not participate in the same pitch accent or tone sandhi system. Instead the vowel in an inflectional suffix takes the opposite tone of the final noninflectional vowel, except for a few suffixes such as the adessive *-ġaa* and in some cases the perlativ *-náx*. Those inflectional suffixes which consist only of a posterior consonant undergo rounding depending on the roundness of the nucleus and/or coda of the noninflectional syllable. In the following examples the suffixes on the nouns *x̄aat* "spruce root" and *héen* "fresh water" have alternating tone.

(13) Tone alternation in inflectional noun suffixes.

- a. du x̄aadí awli.óos'
 du x̄aat-ŷí a-ŷu-θ-li-ŷóos'
 3H.PSS spruce.root-PSS 3O-PFV-3S-CL[-D, l, +I]-wash
 "she washed her spruce roots" (DD02:58)
- b. tsu héendei ash kaawanáa
 tsu héen-déi ash-ka-ŷu-θ-ŷa-náa₃
 again water-ALL 3PRX.O-HSFC-PFV-3S-CL[-D, θ, +I]-command
 "he sent him to the water" (DD87:142)

[[Give examples with the same suffix but different root tones.]]

Tlingit nouns come in two basic types, possessable and unpossessable. The former type makes up the vast majority of nouns, while the latter consists essentially of proper names. Thus proper names cannot be the possessum in a

possessive construction, compare *Áanis hídi* |Alice house.PSS| “Alice’s house” but **Áanis Jáani **|Alice John.PSS| “Alice’s John” and **Áanis du Jáan* “Alice her John”.

The possessable nouns are separated into two subtypes, alienable and inalienable. Alienable nouns are optionally possessable, and have possessive suffixes when occurring as the possessum in a possessive construction. The possessive suffix is represented underlyingly as *-yí*, but since the consonant $\uparrow y$ ($\uparrow / \text{u} /$, see §3.1.1 and §3.1.5.4) no longer exists, of course this is not how it surfaces. Instead it undergoes rounding, tone alternation, and consonant assimilation, becoming one of *-yí*, *-yi*, *-í*, *-i*, *-wú*, *-wu*, *-ú*, or *-u* depending on the shape of the noun.

Inalienable nouns are obligatorily possessed, and are consequently not marked for possession. When an inalienable noun is marked with the possessive suffix it is thereby converted to an alienable noun. In citation forms the inalienable nouns are shown with a dummy possessor which may be the third person human possessive *du*, third person nonhuman possessive *a*, indefinite human possessive *kaa*, or indefinite nonhuman possessive *at*.

(14) Alienable vs. inalienable possession.

- a. a_x hídi
 a_x hít-yí
 1SG.PSS house-PSS
 “my house”
- b. a_x shá
 1SG.PSS head:INAL
 “my head”

Inalienable nouns typically refer to body parts and kin, but there is also a large class of relational nouns which indicate spatial, temporal, or abstract relationships with their possessors. Relational nouns can be compounded to form quite complex concrete or abstract relationship terms which have interesting interactions with the local case system. An example of this complexity can be seen in the following example.

- (15) Noun compounding.
 a k'itukax'wáal'i
 a k'í-tú-ká-x'wáal'-yí
 3N.PSS base-inside-horizontal.surface-down.feather-PSS
 “its plucked down (feathers)” (LHR01:T.42)

Aside from possession, there are two other non-case kinds of noun inflection. The simplest is the diminutive which is a suffix *-k'* that may appear as a rounded *-k'w*. Like other consonantal suffixes, an anaptyctic vowel *a ~ u* may optionally be inserted between the suffix and any final consonants of the noun. The diminutive primarily indicates smallness or childlike qualities of the noun, but may also be used for expressing endearment, and sometimes appears to be purely lexical as in (*du*) *léelk'w* “(his) grandparent”. Diminutives may also be formed phrasally with *yádi* “child of” or *k'átsk'u* “child of”, with the latter apparently containing a diminutive suffix.

The other kind of non-case noun inflection is the plural. There are actually several types of plurals for nouns. The suffix *-x'* is common, and has a rounded allomorph *-x'w*. As with the diminutive, some speakers may insert an anaptyctic vowel between the suffix and the root to break up a resulting consonant cluster. Another plural is the clitic *=háś* which can be used to pluralize humans or other animate entities. The collective plurals *=sáani* and *=yán* are also used to pluralize humans, but each seems to be restricted to certain types of kin rather than being acceptable for any arbitrary human. Despite having this relative wealth of plurals, Tlingit speakers tend not to use them much, instead leaving plurality to be determined by context. This tendency to not mark plurals probably indicates that nouns are not inherently singular, but are in fact unspecified for number.

The cases and postpositions are the argument system of nominal morphology. Cases are divided into two types, the grammatical and local cases. The grammatical cases comprise the ergative *-ch* and the unmarked absolutive which I occasionally gloss as *-∅* for expository purposes. The ergative marks the subject of transitive sentences, as well as being used sometimes to mark instruments. It is somewhat peculiar for a typical ergative marker since it is often optional and very occasionally more than one may appear in a sentence. The absolutive, being unmarked, is unremarkable.

The local cases are suffixes that indicate spatial and temporal relationships. The locative *-x'* simply indicates location; note that it has the same form as the plural *-x'*. The locative has three allomorphs *-:* (i.e. long final vowel), *-i*, and *-∅*.

The allative *-dēi* indicates motion towards the marked noun; it has a predictable allomorph *-dei* after nouns with high tone on final syllables, a phenomenon I call “alternate tone”. The ablative *-dāx̄* indicates motion away from the marked noun; it also has alternate tone. The perlative *-náx̄* indicates motion along or through the marked noun. The perlative suffix sometimes shows alternate tone, but sometimes does not, and the reasons for this are not exactly clear, although it may be that the perlative is in transition from a postposition to a suffix. The adessive *-ḡaa* indicates something which is close to or following the marked noun. It can describe physical adjacency or succession, as well as similar temporal meanings. In addition it can indicate the purpose of an action. It does not have alternate tone, but is instead always low tone.

The instrumental suffix is either *-een*, *-teen*, or *-n* depending on noun shape. It is actually more accurately termed an instrumental-comitative, but I prefer the term “instrumental” for brevity’s sake. On inanimate nouns the instrumental indicates the use of the marked noun as an instrument, whereas on animate nouns it indicates comitative accompaniment. It can also be used as a comitative with inanimate nouns where it means that the marked noun is carried or otherwise brought along by some agent. Roberta Littlefield (p.c. 2007) suggests that it may be separating such that *-een* ~ *-n* is becoming comitative and *-teen* is becoming instrumental, ignoring the phonological environment.

There are two cases which are typologically unusual and which have relatively opaque meanings, these are the punctual and pertingent cases. Despite being crosslinguistically peculiar, they are quite common in ordinary Tlingit speech. The punctual *-t* indicates motion which comes to a terminating point at the marked noun, or position at a point on the marked noun. The meaning of this case suffix can sometimes be somewhat obscure, particularly the reasons why a speaker chooses this case rather than the locative or pertingent in non-motion situations. Its exact meaning changes depending on the theme category of the verb, for example with *na*-conjugation atelic imperfectives it indicates movement around the marked noun rather than position. Unlike the locative, the punctual does not usually seem to cause anaptyxis. The pertingent *-x̄* indicates extended contact or location with the marked noun, and as an extension of this can indicate having the physical form or some other quality of the marked noun. Another extension of the basic meaning is that of membership, as found in the phrase *Deisheetaanx̄ haa sitee* “we are of the Deisheetaan (clan)”; this use is correlated with the verb theme *P-x̄ O-CL[-D, s]-tee* “O be a member of P, be one of P”. It also may indicate repetitive physical arrival at the marked noun. The pertingent can cause anaptyxis, but unlike the anaptyctic effects of the other

case suffixes, the anaptyctic vowel is never written with $-x$.

The locative-predicative $-u$ is a case-like suffix which is used in sentences where a verb is unnecessary. Thus the marked noun (usually a relational noun or demonstrative) becomes the predicate of the sentence, and indicates that the subject is in the location of the marked noun.

- (16) wéidu a \bar{x} tlaa áwé
 wéi-t-u a \bar{x} tlaa á-wé
 MDST-PNCT-LPRD 1SG.PSS mother FOC-MDST
 “there’s my mother”

With demonstratives the locative-predicative usually \llbracket always? \rrbracket follows the punctual case suffix $-t$ as shown in the example above. This is essentially because such constructions are a verbal form of pointing, and as such the punctual is appropriate. Indeed, such uses of the locative-predicative are often accompanied by manual pointing where it is culturally appropriate.

The postpositions are similar to the local cases in that they indicate spatiotemporal relationships, but are distinct in their status as independent words rather than suffixes. Other authors, for example Dauenhauer & Dauenhauer (2000), have lumped the cases and postpositions together as “postpositions”, but I distinguish the two because they have different phonological and morphological properties.

The similative postposition $yáx$ indicates similarity with the marked noun, and is fairly close in meaning to the English adverbs “like” and “as”. It may be derived from the relational noun (a) $yá$ “(its) face, vertical surface” in combination with the pertingent suffix $-x$. As well as its use in indicating resemblance, it is also used in color constructions such as *dléit yáx yatee* |snow SIM 30.be| “it is white”. The benefactive postposition $yís$ has an allomorph $-s$ after some high-frequency words in some dialects, and indicates that the marked noun is the receiver or beneficiary of some action. The elative postposition $nák$ indicates movement away from the marked noun, and is illustrated in the quote at the opening of this grammar. The exact difference between the elative postposition and the ablative case suffix still eludes me, although the elative does seem to have a subtle sense of abandonment. The abessive postposition $góot$ indicates the lack of the marked noun. \llbracket Perhaps call this “privative”? \rrbracket The superlative postposition $yáanáx$ indicates superlative comparison with the marked noun, and is thus common in comparative constructions. It often occurs with the third person nonhuman a “it”, where that anaphor usually has a referent outside of

the sentence. The sublative postposition *kín* is the opposite of the superlative, and is also thus common in comparative constructions. Compared with the superlative, the sublative is somewhat less common.

4.1. Basic phonological structure

Monosyllables. Open monosyllables. Closed monosyllables. Onset clusters. Coda clusters. Coda clusters appearing from suffixes, and anaptyctic suffix avoidance.

Other issues?

4.2. Possession and alienability

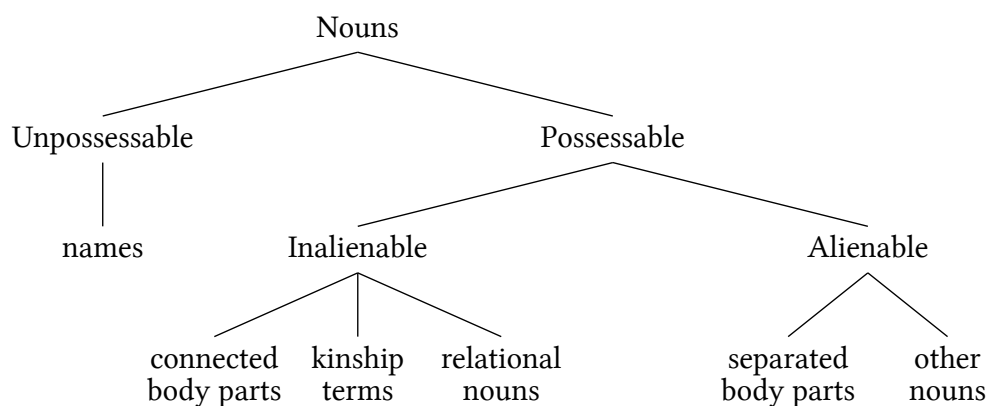


Figure 4.1: Noun possession classes.

Classes of possession; flexibility of possession class. Possessive constructions.

4.2.1. Alienability

The term “alienable” and alternatives.

4.2.1.1. Unpossessable nouns

Unpossessability of names. Possibility of other unpossessable nouns.

4.2.1.2. Alienable nouns

Prototypical alienable nouns. Properties of alienable nouns. Types of alienable nouns.

4.2.1.3. Inalienable nouns

Prototypical inalienable nouns. Properties of inalienable nouns. Types of inalienable nouns. Conversion of inalienable nouns into alienable nouns via possessive suffixation.

4.2.2. Possessive pronouns

Definite possessive pronouns. Indefinite possessive pronouns. Relationship with Athabaskan and Eyak. Status as independent words versus prefixes.

4.2.3. Possessive suffix

“Possessed” or “possessive” or “possessum”?

-yí	<i>consonant final</i>		<i>vowel final</i>	
	[-rnd]	[+rnd]	[-rnd]	[+rnd]
<i>high</i>	-i	-u	-yi	-wu
<i>low</i>	-í	-ú	-yí	-wú

Table 4.1: Forms of the possessive suffix $-yí$. The labels describe the syllable preceding the suffix.

4.3. Diminutive $-k'(w)$

Meaning. Productivity. Other diminutive constructions.

4.4. Plural

4.4.1. Plural suffix $-x'(w)$ 4.4.2. Plural *hás*4.4.3. Human collective *sáani*

- (17) aanyátx'u sáani
 aan-yát-x'-yí sáani
 town-child-PL-PSS COLL
 “little high class people, little aristocrats” (LHR01:T·2)

- (18) k'isáani
 k'i-sáani
 ??-COLL
 “young men” (LHR01:T·42)

4.4.4. Kin collective *yán*

- (19) du kaani yán
 du káan-yí=yán
 3H.PSS sibling.in.law-PSS=COLL
 “his brothers-in-law; his sisters-in-law” (LHR01:T·31)

4.5. Cases and postpositions

	<i>Form</i>	<i>Name</i>	<i>Abbv.</i>	<i>Meaning</i>
<i>gram.</i>	-ch	ergative	ERG	transitive verb subj.
	—	absolutive	ABS	trans. verb obj., intrans. subj.
<i>local cases</i>	-x' ~ -: ~ -i ~ -∅	locative	LOC	“at, in, by, on”
	-déi ~ -dei	allative	ALL	“to, toward, until, manner of”
	-dáx ~ -dax̄ ~ -dx̄	ablative	ABL	“from, out of”
	-náx̄ ~ -nax̄	perlative	PERL	“along, by, via, during”
	-ḡaa	adessive	ADES	“around, about, by, after, for”
	-een ~ -teen ~ -n	instrumental	INSTR	“along with, using, as soon as”
	-t	punctual	PNCT	“at, to, about”
	-x̄	pertinent	PERT	“at, form of, concerning”
	-u	loc.-predicative	LPRD	location in verbless sentence
<i>postpositions</i>	yáx̄	similative	SIM	“like, as, similar to”
	yís	benefactive	BEN	“for, benefiting”
	nák̄	elative	ELAT	“away from”
	ḡóot	abessive	ABES	“without, lacking”
	yáanax̄ ~ yáanax̄	superlative	SUP	“more than”
kín	sublative	SUB	“less than”	

Table 4.2: Postpositions and case suffixes.

4.5.1. Grammatical cases

4.5.1.1. Ergative -ch

Subject marking. Lack of marking with unergatives. Instrumental. Idiomatic and peculiar uses.

4.5.1.2. Absolutive

Absence of absolutive marking.

4.5.2. Local cases

Phonological arguments for suffix status.

4.5.2.1. Locative *-x'*, *-i*, *-i*, \emptyset -

Usual form *-x'*. Meaning.

Allomorph *-i*, appearing with open monosyllables. Typical forms. Free variation is speaker dependent.

Allomorph *-i*, appearing where?

Allomorph \emptyset , appearing where?

4.5.2.2. Allative *-déi*

Meaning. Relationship with noun *déi* “trail, path, road”. Alternate tone.

4.5.2.3. Ablative *-dác*

Meaning. Alternate tone. Allomorph *-dác* after certain open syllables, but not others. Free variation.

4.5.2.4. Perlative *-nác*

Meaning. Alternate tone. Lack of tone alternation in some forms; may be still becoming a suffix. Lack of allomorph **-nác*.

4.5.2.5. Adessive *-gaa*

Meaning. Lack of tone alternation.

4.5.2.6. Instrumental *-een*, *-teen*, *-n*

Meaning. Status as comitative. Littlefield’s split hypothesis.

Allomorph *-n* after open monosyllables.

Allomorph *-teen* after open syllables.

Difference between instrumental *-een* and pronominal base *ee*. Use of allomorph *-n* with pronominal base. Hypothesis regarding extension of *-een* from *ee-n*. Source of *-teen* as multicase construction.

4.5.2.7. Punctual *-t*

Basic meanings. Meaning with particular verb theme categories.

Unwritten anaptyxis.

Choice between punctual, pertinent, and locative in non-motion contexts.

4.5.2.8. Pertingent *-x̄*

Basic meaning. Extension as physical form or quality. Extension as membership.

Unwritten anaptyxis.

4.5.2.9. Locative predicative *-u*

Meaning. Conventional forms. Productive forms.

4.5.3. Postpositions

Phonological arguments against suffix status.

4.5.3.1. Similative *yáx̄*

Meaning. Hypothesis as grammaticalization of [⊕]*yá-x̄*.

4.5.3.2. Benefactive *yís*

Meaning. Assimilatory phenomena in *jís*, *x'éis*.

4.5.3.3. Elative *nák̄*

Meaning. Contrast with *-náx̄*.

4.5.3.4. Abessive *ḡóot*

Meaning. Comparison with *ḡuna*.

4.5.3.5. Superlative *yáanáx̄*

Meaning. Question of status as real postposition.

4.5.3.6. Sublative *kín*

Meaning. Question of status as real postposition.

4.6. Relational nouns

4.6.1. Concrete relations

4.6.2. Abstract relations

4.7. Demonstratives

4.7.1. Distance

4.7.2. Definiteness

4.7.3. Focus

4.7.4. Topic

4.8. Compounding

4.8.1. Tone phenomena in compounds

4.8.2. Relational and nonrelational compounding

4.8.3. Possessive compounds

4.8.4. Nonpossessive compounds

4.9. Noun derivation

4.9.1. Deverbal derivation

4.9.2. Noun-verb-noun derivation

4.10. Pronominals and pronouns

The pronominal system of Tlingit is relatively complex, with five different paradigms and fourteen paradigmatic types. Two paradigms are part of the verb, namely the subject (+2) and object (+14+16) prefixes; these are described as part of the chapter on verb structure (chapter 8) in §8.4.3, §8.4.15, and §8.4.16, respectively. The rest of the pronominal system is comprised of three noun-like paradigms, the possessive, independent, and postpositional pronouns. In addition to these paradigms there are also a group of interrogative pronouns which have distinctly different forms and functions from the rest of the system; these are discussed in §4.10.2. I make a terminological distinction between pronominals in the verb and those outside, adopting PRONOUN for only the free words occurring outside of the verb, and PRONOMINAL for the prefixes that occur within the verb. In addition I use “pronominal” as a cover term for the entire category.

[[examples]]

4.10.1. Personal pronouns

A complete inventory of the personal (i.e. non-interrogative) pronominal system is given in table 4.3 on page 76. None of the pronominal paradigms is complete when compared to the others, meaning that there are gaps in every paradigm. The pronominal object prefixes (§8.4.15) have the most complete paradigm, missing only a third person obviate form. The possessive pronouns (§4.10.1.1) are the next most complete, with possibly missing but unverified third person obviate and partitive forms. The most defective paradigm is found in the subject pronominals (§8.4.3), where only the first and second person are complete, the third only occurs in plain and obviate forms, and the indefinite human occurs but the indefinite nonhuman does not.

Humanity is a distinction which is particularly salient in the pronominal system. Human and nonhuman are distinguished in both the third person pronouns and the indefinite pronouns. It may be that this distinction is older in the indefinites, given that the verb pronominals collapse the two in the third person. Humanity is most obvious in possessives, where inalienable nouns take on different meanings depending on the humanity of the possessor. Thus the alienable noun *goosh* has two distinct senses depending on its possessor, *du gooshí* |du goosh-ŷí| “his/her thumb” versus *a gooshí* |a goosh-ŷí| “its dorsal fin”. In order to capture this distinction, dictionaries will usually include two entries for a single noun, one with a human possessor and one with a nonhuman possessor.

	<i>Object (o)</i>	<i>Subject (s)</i>	<i>Possessive (PSS)</i>	<i>Independent</i>	<i>Postpositional</i>
1SG	$\underline{x}at^- \sim a\underline{x}^-_{+14}$	$\underline{x}a^-_{+2}$	$a\underline{x}$	$\underline{x}át$	$a\underline{x}=ee \sim \underline{x}aa$
1PL	haa^-_{+14}	tu^-_{+2}	haa	uháan*	haa=ee
2SG	i^-_{+14}	i^-_{+2}	i	wa.é	i=ee
2PL	yi^-_{+14}	yi^-_{+2}	yi	yiháan*	yi=ee
3H } 3N }3	$\emptyset^- \sim a^-_{+14}$	\emptyset^-_{+2}	du a	hú ?	du=ee a
3PRX	ash^-_{+14}	—	ash	?	ash=ee ~ a=ee
3OBV	—	du^-_{+2}	?	?	?
INDH	$\underline{k}u^- \sim \underline{k}aa^-_{+14}$	du^-_{+2}	$\underline{k}aa$?	$\underline{k}u=ee$
INDN	at^-_{+14}	—	at	at	?
RFLX	$sh^- \sim \emptyset^-_{+14}$	—	chush	?	chush=ee
PART	aa^-_{+14}	—	?	aa	?
RECIP	$woosh^-_{+16}$	—	woosh	wóosh	woosh=ee
(3)PL	has^-_{+15}	—	has-du	hás	has-du=ee

Table 4.3: Pronouns and pronominals (+2, +14, +15, +16). The *Object* and *Subject* columns are pronominal prefixes in the verb, all others are independent words. Question marks indicate uncertain gaps, em-dashes indicate verified gaps. Forms marked with an asterisk * are variable (see §4.10.1.2.2 and §4.10.1.2.4).

The distinction between proximate and obviate is only fully clear in the verb, with third obviate subject *du-* and third proximate object *ash-*. Note that the indefinite human *du-* is homophonous with the third person obviate subject *du-*, an issue addressed in §8.4.3. In each slot the opposition is between an unmarked third person and a discourse-marked third person, with the more marked discourse form representing the unexpected appearance of an otherwise less salient role. Since subjects are more likely to be discursively prominent, the marked form is the less topical third person obviate *du-*. In contrast, since objects are more likely to be discursively backgrounded, the marked form is the third person proximate *ash-*.

The reflexive, partitive, and reciprocal are somewhat less common pronominals. The reflexive and reciprocal are associated with middle voice and lowered

transitivity in the verb (see §8.4.1.1.1). [⋯]

The first and second person pronominals are the only ones which have clear singular/plural distinctions. A third person plural exists in several paradigms, but it is not clear that it is a direct counterpart of the first and second plurals. In the possessive and postpositional pronouns the third person plurals *has-du* and *has-du=ee* are clearly compounds of the corresponding ordinary third persons and an underlying form related to the independent plural *hás*. The object pronominal *has-₊₁₅* is also separate from the third person object pronominal \emptyset ~ *a-₊₁₄*, and it occasionally indicates plurality of subjects and also possible of events. This obscurity surrounding plurals in the pronominal system actually reflects other semantic problems with number that are probably related to issues which Wilhelm (2008) has addressed in Dëne Sųliné.

4.10.1.1. Possessive pronouns

- 4.10.1.1.1. First person singular *aḵ*
- 4.10.1.1.2. First person plural *haa*
- 4.10.1.1.3. Second person singular *ee*
- 4.10.1.1.4. Second person plural *yee*
- 4.10.1.1.5. Third person human *du*
- 4.10.1.1.6. Third person human plural *has-du*
- 4.10.1.1.7. Third person nonhuman *a*
- 4.10.1.1.8. Third person proximate *ash*
- 4.10.1.1.9. Third person obviate *a*
- 4.10.1.1.10. Indefinite human *kaa*
- 4.10.1.1.11. Indefinite nonhuman *at*
- 4.10.1.1.12. Reflexive *chush*
- 4.10.1.1.13. Reciprocal *woosh*

4.10.1.2. Independent pronouns

4.10.1.2.1. First person singular *xát*

4.10.1.2.2. First person plural *ooháan**

4.10.1.2.3. Second person singular *wa.é*

4.10.1.2.4. Second person plural *yeeháan**

4.10.1.2.5. Third person human *hú*

4.10.1.2.6. Third person plural *hás*

4.10.1.2.7. Indefinite human *at*

4.10.1.2.8. Indefinite nonhuman *káa*

4.10.1.2.9. Partitive *aa*

4.10.1.2.10. Reciprocal *wóosh*

4.10.1.3. Postpositional pronouns

The postpositional pronouns are nearly identical with the possessive pronouns, although the third person proximate and indefinite human have different forms. The underlying principle seems to be that the possessive pronouns cannot directly take case suffixes and postpositions, hence a meaningless morpheme =*ee* is used as a host for case and postposition attachment. I have labeled this meaningless morpheme *BASE* in glosses, and term it the *PRONOMINAL BASE*.

I have analyzed the pronominal base =*ee* as a clitic. It has two phonemic forms, one with an initial glottal stop and one without. Thus the form *ax=ee-n* |1SG=BASE-INSTR| “with me” may be pronounced as /ʔaxʔi:n/ or /ʔaxi:n/, depending on the speaker and context. (The form with a glottal stop is usual in more careful speech.) This variation leads to the conclusion that the pronominal base is a clitic, so that when it is fully suffixed to the pronoun the glottal stop disappears, but when it is more independent the glottal stop arises according to the usual rule of word-initial empty onset filling: $V(C) \rightarrow ?V(C) / \#_$ (see §3.3.2.1).

The source of the pronominal base is obscure. It could merely be a filler vowel that arose from anaptyxis, but it might have more a meaningful history. One form which could plausibly be related is the relational noun *eet* “remains” as in the compounds *gan eetí* “ash” (|firewood remains-PSS|), *gagaan eetí* “sunbeam” (*gagaan eet-ýí* |sun remains-PSS|), and *tá eetí* “sign of having slept” (*tá eet-ýí* |sleep remains-PSS|).¹

1. The term *tá eetí* is a sign of where an animal has slept, for example an area of bent grass where a deer spent the night. It can also refer to the space where a human has slept.

- 4.10.1.3.1. First person singular $a\bar{x}=ee \sim \bar{x}aa$
- 4.10.1.3.2. First person plural $haa=ee$
- 4.10.1.3.3. Second person singular $ee=ee$
- 4.10.1.3.4. Second person plural $yee=ee$
- 4.10.1.3.5. Third person human $du=ee$
- 4.10.1.3.6. Third person human plural $has-du=ee$
- 4.10.1.3.7. Third person nonhuman a
- 4.10.1.3.8. Third person proximate $ash=ee \sim a=ee$
- 4.10.1.3.9. Indefinite human $ku=ee$
- 4.10.1.3.10. Reflexive $chush=ee$
- 4.10.1.3.11. Reciprocal $woosh=ee$

4.10.2. Interrogative pronouns

Cable 2006*b*

- 4.10.2.1. What *daa(t)*
- 4.10.2.2. Which *daak_w*
- 4.10.2.3. Who *aa*
- 4.10.2.4. Who *aadoo*
- 4.10.2.5. Where *goo*
- 4.10.2.6. How, why, what *wáa ~ máa*
- 4.10.2.7. How much *x'oon*
- 4.10.2.8. When-past *gwatk*
- 4.10.2.9. When-future *gwatgeen*

4.11. Demonstratives

4.11.1. Nounlike qualities

4.11.2. Interaction with locative-predicative

4.12. Quantifiers

4.13. Directionals

The directional system of Tlingit has received very little research. Leer (1989) offers the only publication which contains an extensive investigation of this particular area, and it is situated in the context of Na-Dene historical reconstruction. Kari (1985) provides a slightly earlier look at Athabaskan directional systems which is useful for comparative understanding of the Tlingit system.

4.14. Kinship

Kinship is more properly an anthropological issue than a linguistic issue, but kinship terms in Tlingit have a few interesting linguistic properties which deserve discussion here. Durlach (1928) published the first linguistically informed examination of Tlingit kinship terminology along with a comparison to Haida and Coast Tsimshian kinship systems.

4.15. Names

Names are a salient category of nouns in Tlingit. Unlike most types of morpheme, there is an appropriate Tlingit term *saa* “name” for this grammatical category, along with the verb root *saa*₂ “call”² that appears in the themes *O-S-CL[-D, ∅]-saa*₂ “S name O, call O by name, nominate O”, *S-CL[+D, ∅]-saa*₂ “S breathe”, *P-ch O-S-CL[-D, l]-saa*₂ “S name O for some characteristic P”, and *O-x’a-S-CL[-D, ∅]-saa*₂ “S call on O (spirit)” (NS73:301).

Names have a few special grammatical properties, the most important of which is that they are unpossessable (§4.2.1.1). **[[Other grammatical properties.]]**

Names can be divided into four major semantic domains based on the type of referent. Personal names are those which apply to an individual, either a

2. There are also the homophonous roots *saa*₁ “be narrow” and *saa*₃ “rest” (NS73:301).

human, e.g. *Dzéiwsh*, or to a legendary or mythical entity, e.g. *Dukt'ootl'* “Black Skin”.³ Clan names apply to clans and to moieties, and have certain characteristic morphological patterns that set them apart from other nouns. Ethnonyms are applied to non-Tlingit entities, with some being borrowings and some derived from Tlingit roots. Finally, placenames refer to geographical entities and extents, such as towns, the various *k'wáan*, rivers, and mountains, among many other examples.

4.15.1. Personal names

There are a huge variety of personal names which exist in Tlingit, with thousands maintained by some clans. It is impossible to list them all, but to give some idea of the construction of personal names I present a select few names here. The names I have chosen are taken from the Dauenhauer’s first collection of Tlingit oratory (DD87), being the personal names of the various individuals who provided those narratives.

[[*Shaadaax'* = *shaa-daa-x'* |mountain-around-LOC|, *Ixt'ik' Éesh* = *ixt'- k' éesh* |shaman-DIM father|, *Kéet Yaanaayí*, *Tseexwáa*, *Taakw K'wát'i* = *taakw k'wát'-yí* |winter egg-PSS|, *Yeilnaawú* = *yéil-naa-yú* |raven-corpse- PSS|, *Naakil.aan*, *Kaasgeiy*, *Kooteen*, *Yaaneekee*, *Jeeník*, *Asx'aak* = *aas- x'aak* |tree-space.between| (DD87).]]

4.15.2. Clan names

Tlingit clan names have their own special morphology which occurs nowhere else in the language. Some have clearly undergone extensive phonological reduction from earlier forms which are often maintained alongside the common names in oral traditions. The following are lists of the known Raven and Wolf/Eagle clans adapted from Hope III et al. (2003). There are probably a few other clans which were not included in that document, for example the *Til'hittaaan* (LHR01:M.149) which is included below in the Raven clan list.

3. *Dukt'ootl'* is often known as “Strong Man” in English, which derives from his legendary exploits. The Tlingit name is from *dook t'ootl'* |skin charcoal|, with the word *t'ootl'* being an obscure variant of *t'ooch'* (see chapter 13).

(20) *Yéil* (Raven) clans, adapted from Hope III et al. (2003).

Deisheetaan	Kooyu.eidí	L'uknaḡ.ádi	Til'hittaaan
Gaanax.ádi	Kwaashk'ikwáan	Naach'ooneidí	Tooka.ádi
Gaanaxteidí	K'óoxeeneidí	Noowshaka.aayí	Tuḡyeidí
Ishkahittaaan	Ḳaach.ádi	Suḡteeneidí	T'aḡdeintaan
Ishkeetaan	Ḳak'weidí	Taakw.aaneidí	Watineidí
Kaasḡ'agweidí	Ḳoosk'eidí	Taalkweidí	X'at'ka.aayí
Kiks.ádi	Lukaax.ádi	Teeyhittaaan	X'alchaneidí
Kookhittaaan	L'eneidí	Teeyneidí	

(21) *Gooch* (Wolf) / *Ch'áak'* (Eagle) clans, adapted from Hope III et al. (2003).

Chookaneidí	Ḳaax'oos.hittaaan	Shangukeidí	Was'ineidí
Daḡisdinaa	Ḳookhittaaan	Shankweidí	Wooshkeetaan
Dakl'aweidí	Lḡuweidí	S'eet'ḡweidí	X'ook'eidí
Jishḡweidí	Naanyaa.aayí	S'iknaḡ.ádi	X'ax'ahittaaan
Kaagwaantaan	Naasteidí	Teiḡweidí	Yanyeidí
Kadaḡw.ádi	Neiḡ.ádi ⁴	Tsaagweidí	
Kayaashkiditaan	Nees.ádi	Tsaateeneidí	

As can be seen from the lists above, there are a couple of regular patterns into which all clan names fit. I class them into *-taan* clans, *-ádi* clans, *-eidí* clans, and *-áayí* clans, as well as one *ḡwáan* clan and one *naa* clan. The *-áayí* clans are *Noowshaka.aayí* and *X'at'ka.aayí* on the Raven side and *Naanyaa.aayí* on the Wolf side. Each of these names is morphologically transparent: *noow-shá-ká-ḡaa-ḡí* |fort-head-HSFC-PART-PSS| “ones on the head of the fort”, *x'áat'-ká-ḡaa-ḡí* |island-HSFC-PART-PSS| “ones atop the island”, and *naanyaa-ḡaa-ḡí* |upriver-PART-PSS| “ones (from) upriver”. Thus the *-áayí* suffix is the partitive here translated as “one” with a possessive suffix on the end. The exact purpose of the possessive suffix is not entirely clear, but as will be shown, it occurs in two other clan name classes.

The *-taan* names are relatively numerous, and there are two subclasses that can be delineated. One is the *-hittaaan* subclass and the other is the simple *-taan* subclass. Tlingit speakers usually translate *-hittaaan* as “people of the house of”, and this fits well with the known meanings of several clan

4. The *Neiḡ.ádi* are sometimes considered a “third” moiety, see [?].

names. On the Raven side *Deisheetaan* is derived from *déi-shú-hít-taan* |trail-end-house-people| “people of the house at the end of the trail”, *Ishkahittaaan* is from *ísh-ká-hít-taan* |fishing.hole-HSFC-house-people| “people of the house atop the fishing hole”, *Kookhittaaan* is clearly *kóok-hít-taan* |pit-house-people| “people of the pit house”, *Teeyhittaaan* is *teey-hít-taan* |yellow.cedar.bark-house-people| “people of the yellow-cedar bark house”, and *Til’hittaaan* is from *téel’-hít-taan* |dog.salmon-house-people| “people of the dog salmon house”. On the Wolf side the name *Kaax’oos.hittaaan* is derived from *káa-x’oos-hít-taan* |man-foot-house-people| “people of the man’s foot house”, *Kookhittaaan* is transparently *kook-hít-taan* |box-house-people| “people of the box house”, and *X’ax’ahittaaan* is from *x’ax’aa-hít-taan* |cliff.edge-house-people| “people of the cliff edge house”.

The *-taan* subclass is somewhat smaller. Most *-taan* clan names derive from *-hittaaan* names that have been phonologically reduced, but for some the original derivation is unclear. On the Raven side *Ishkeetaan* is a reduced form of the previously described *Ishkahittaaan*, here with loss of *h*, merger of *a* and *i* to give *ee*, and reduction of the transsyllabic sequence *tt* (phonetically IPA /t.t^h/) to monosyllabic onset *t* (IPA /t^h/). The name *T’akdeintaan* is less clear. It is sometimes linked to the snail *táax’*, but this has an ejective consonant in the coda rather than the onset. Hope III et al. (2003) left it unanalyzed in the house name *T’akdein Hít* “T’akdein House”, and it sometimes occurs as *Tak’deintaan* which may be either the earlier form or a reanalysis by analogy with *táax’*. There is the word *t’aak* which means “beside, at the side of” that is probably related. On the Wolf side there are three more *-taan* clan names, with *Kaagwaantaan* being reduced from an earlier **Kaawagaanihittaaan* that derives from *ka-ÿu-ÿa-gaan-ÿi-hít-taan* |HSFC-PFV-CI[-D, Ø, +I]-burn-ATTR-house-people| “people of the burnt house”. [[*Wooshkeetaan* = *woosh-ká-hít-taan*?]] *Kayaashkiditaan* is from *kayáash-ká-hít-taan* |platform-HSFC-house-people| “people of the platform house”. The exact phonological process which produced the sequence /k^hiti/ from /k^hahít/ is unclear, but there seems to be some sort of anticipation of /t/ involved, as well as retrogressive spreading of the front vowel.

[[*?ádi*]]

[[*?eidi*]]

[[*kwáan* and *naa*]]

Some of the clan names are somewhat variable, particularly those which do not have a transparent morphological structure. As noted earlier, *T’akdeintaan* sometime occurs as *Tak’deintaan*, perhaps through folk analogy and subsequent reanalysis. Reduction of clusters over syllable boundaries is not uncommon, so for example in *Gaanax.ádi* the cluster /χ.ʔ/ is often reduced to /χ/ giving

Gaanaxádi with a new syllabification of [qa:na.χá.ti]. Reduction is common in other names, as the pair *Ishkahittaan* and *Ishkeetaan* demonstrate. Vowel shortening is somewhat common in informal speech, so one can encounter forms like [wuʃk^{hit}hɑ:n] for *Wooshkeetaan*. Lexical variation gives rise to a variation between *Naanyaa.aayí* and *Naanaa.aayí*, where *naanyaa* “upriver”⁵ may have undergone reanalysis from /na:n.ja:/ to a prohibited /na:n.ja:/ which is saved by deleting the /j/. The word *naanaa* has apparently dialectal distribution, occurring in the Interior dialects and some northern Coastal dialects, elsewhere occurring as *naanyaa*.

4.15.3. Ethnonyms

[[*Gunanaa* (Athabaskan), *Deikeenaa* (Haida), *Ts’ootsxán* (Coast Tsimshian), *Kuten Kwáan* (S. Tutchone), *Ayaane* (N. Tutchone, Hän), *Tsinxoo Kwáan* (Upper Tanana), *Ikka Kwáan?* (Ahtna), *Eyak?*, *T’aawyaat’ Kwáan* (American Indians, esp. Plains), *Ixkee Kwáan* (“southerners”, PacNW south of Coast Tsimshian), *Ana.oot Kwáan* (Aleut).]]

[[*Anóoshi Kwáan* (Russian), *Gus’k’i Kwáan* (“under-the-clouds”, “under-horizon”, early explorers), *Wáashdan Kwáan* (“Boston-men”, American), *Ginjuch Kwáan* (“King George men”, Anglo-Canadian), *Hinginán Kwáan* (Anglo-Canadian), *Chaanwaan Kwáan* (Chinese), *Shakas’éet Kwáan* (“turban-wearing”, Pakistani, Indian, Bangladeshi, etc.).]]

[[*Haadaa Kwáan* “foreigners”, *haadaa-*. Connection with “Haida”? Or just “around us”?]]

[[*Dleit Káa*, *Tooch’ Káa*, ...]]

[[**Kwaseiyuks Kwáan*, **Taaltan Kwáan*, **Tagish Kwáan*, **Tachun Kwáan*, **Jawanee Kwáan*, **Xwinikeen Kwáan*, ...]]

4.15.4. Placenames

The term for placename in Tlingit is *aan saayí* (*aan saa-ŷí* |land name-PSS). Placenames in Tlingit are generally nominal compounds, although some include deverbal forms or even conjugated verbs. An extensive atlas of *Lingít Aaní* is being prepared by Thomas Thornton, titled *Haa Leelk’w Hás Aaní Saax’ú* (*haa léelk’w=hás aan-ŷí saa-x’-ŷí* |₁PL.PSS grandparent=PL land-PSS name-PL-PSS| “our grandparent’s land’s names”), which will provide a wealth of Tlingit placenames. This section offers an analysis of a small sample of Tlingit placenames,

5. Probably from an earlier **naaniyaa*.

focusing on those names which are especially important in Tlingit culture. The three categories addressed are the great rivers, the major mountains, and the *kwáan* and settlements.

4.15.4.1. The great rivers

The seven major rivers in *Lingít Aaní* which pierce the coastal mountains are from south to north the Nass *Naas*, Stikine *Shtax'héen*, Taku *T'aaku*, Chilkat *Jilkaat*, Tatshenshini *T'achanshahéeni*, Alsek *Alséix*, and Copper *Eek Héeni*. This ordering of names is not an accident of geography. Tlingit people were migrating northward even as late as the first European contact, and the southern parts of Southeast Alaska are universally held to be the older homeland of the Tlingit. This is of course reflected in the fact that the most conservative dialect of Tlingit is also found in the southernmost part of *Lingít Aaní*, and in that linguistic change and linguistic homogeneity both increase in a northerly direction. Thus I will analyze each river name in turn from the southernmost to the northernmost.

The Nass River is highly significant in myth and legend, as the home of Raven (*Yéil*) and his Grandfather (*Naas-shakée Yéil* [Nass-top.of Raven])⁶, as well as the river down which a number of Tlingit clans migrated to the ocean. Today the Nass is home to the Coast Tsimshian and Nisgá'a people, although at least some parts may have been Tlingit territory at some point in the past (Marie-Lucie Tarpent, p.c. 2009). The name *Naas* is simply “guts, intestine” as in (*du naasí* “(his) intestines, guts” (LHR01:T·54), and this refers to its role as a source of food via hooligan (*Thaleichthys pacificus*) and salmon runs. Intriguingly, the Tlingit name appears as *nis* in the name of the Tsimshianic people /nisqaʔa/ (Tarpent, p.c. 2009), and there is a possible etymology of this ethnonym from something like the Tlingit **Naas-kwáan* [Nass-people] or perhaps **Naas káa-ýi* [Nass man-PSS], modified through Tsimshianic phonology and historical sound changes.

[[Note the Tsimshianic name (?) which is quite different and ended up not being the name used by English speakers.]]

6. Swanton (1909:80) gives this name as *Nās-ca'kí-yēl* and translates it as “Raven at the head of the Nass”. I have however usually heard it in English as “Raven’s Grandfather”, and I will use this rather than a direct translation. Raven tricked the only daughter of *Naasshakée Yéil* into becoming pregnant with Raven so that he could be born into *Naasshakée Yéil*’s house and subsequently could steal daylight from him. This is an essential creation myth in Tlingit culture and is well known even among English monolinguals in Tlingit society.

The Stikine is called *Shtax'héen* in Tlingit, from whence the English name is derived. It is morphologically *sh-θ-θ-tax'héen* |RFLX.O-ZCNJ-3S-CL[-D, θ, -I]-bite river|, meaning something like “it bites itself river”. This name is derived from the dangerous rapids of the Stikine Grand Canyon, and describes the manner in which water swirls around like a dog biting itself.⁷ There are various other translations of the name given, such as “bitter water” (Hope III et al. 2003), “milky river”, and “river discolored by salmon milt”, but these are less satisfying given that they do not have a possible Tlingit derivation that directly matches the name.

The Taku River is *Taaku* which derives from *t'awaak xoo* |canada.goose among|, “among the Canada geese”. The *t'awaak* is *Branta canadensis* ssp. *fulva* (Delacour), the Vancouver Canada goose which is both resident and migratory in Southeast Alaska and along the Pacific Northwest coast. The Taku River features a large migration of geese, and was hence named after this phenomenon. Like the Stikine River, the people who inhabit the mouth of the Taku River are named as a *kwáan* for the river, thus *Taaku Kwáan*. The exact boundary between the *Taaku Kwáan* and the *Áak'w Kwáan* is not entirely clear but it lies somewhere along Gastineau Channel near Juneau; like most traditional boundaries it was probably somewhat flexible. Nonetheless, there is still a distinction between people resident in the Juneau area who are *Taaku Kwáan* descendants and those who are *Áak'w Kwáan* descendants.

The Chilkat is *Jilkáat*, which like the Taku and Stikine is also the name of the *kwáan* which inhabits the area around the river's mouth. A possible derivation that has been offered by many is the form *chil-xáat* |cache-fish| which seems to refer to fish in a cache, but this is not a noun compound that is commonly used nor is the change from *x* to *k* a usual occurrence. There is a comparable placename in Eyak which is more convincing as a source for the Tlingit form, namely *žil-qa'-d* (IPA /tʃiɬqʰaʔt/) |cache-among-LOC| which means “among the cache(s)” (Leer 1990:97), particularly given that high tone on a long vowel in Tlingit developed from an earlier *V? ([see ...]). Michael Krauss (p.c., 2009) notes however that *žil* “platform cache” may be a loanword in Eyak rather than an indigenous word, comparing Minto (Upper Tanana) *ž'el* (IPA /tʃəɬ/) but Proto-Athabaskan **zel* (IPA /tsəɬ/) where the initial affricate should correspond with Eyak *ʒ* (IPA /ts/). Also this would be a remarkable location for an Eyak placename, since Eyak placenames are found just southeast past Yakutat and not much further

7. This explanation is due to *Xaastánch* Charles De Witt, *X'aan Hít, S'iknaḡ.ádi naax, Shtax'héen Kwáan*.

along the coast. **[[What about *Jilkoot*?]]**

The Tatshenshini is *Tachanshahéeni* in Tlingit. This name is a nominal compound of *t'á-chán-shá-héen-yí* |king.salmon-stink-head-river-PSS| “king salmon stinking river head”. The name refers to the smell of king salmon corpses rotting at the headwaters of the river after they have spawned. **[[More?]]**

The Alsek River is the northernmost great river still within Tlingit territory, with its mouth in Dry Bay (*Gunaaxoo*, see §4.15.4.3) halfway between Lituya Bay (*Ltu.aa* < *lú-tú áa* |nose-inside lake|) and Yakutat Bay (*Laaḡaayík* & *Yaakwdáat*, see §4.15.4.3). The Alsek is variously *Alséix* or *Aalséix* in Tlingit. It is usually translated as “resting”, in which case the underlying verb theme must be *S-CL[+D, l]-saa* “S rest (self)” (NS73:172), with the root undergoing apophony (§8.3.2) to become *séi* when suffixed with the habitual *-x* (§8.5.2.3). There are a few kinds of verb prefixes with the shape of *a-* or *aa-*, namely the third person object *a-* (§8.4.15.6), the partitive object *aa-* (§8.4.15.10), the locative preverb *aa=* (§8.4.17.7.2), and the rotatory preverb *áa=(yāx=)* (§8.4.17.7.3). Note that none of these are subjects, so we must assume that the subject is the third person \emptyset - (§8.4.3.5). The third person object would normally be \emptyset -, but in the presence of the third person subject it changes to *a-* (§8.4.15.6.1) so this could be plausible. Unfortunately the theme only contains a slot for a subject, and no slot for an object, so it is hard to justify this. The rotatory preverb would imply turning over and over which does not seem to fit the meaning well, so the only likely candidate is the locative preverb *aa=*. This would fit well, giving *aa=S-CL[+D, l]-saa* “S rest there”. Thus the underlying morphology of the name is probably *aa=∅-l-séi-x* |LOC=3S-CL[+D, l, -I]-rest-HAB|, meaning “he/she always rests there”. Exactly who “he” or “she” was is unclear. It is possible that the name may once have had the plural prefix *has-* ~ *s-* (§8.4.15.12), but the forms *aahasléix* and *aalséix* have the unusual fricative sequence /sʃs/ which militates against using *has-* ~ *s-* which is optional anyway. The name might instead refer to some particular individual – maybe *Yéil?* – who has since been forgotten, or perhaps plurality might have been implicit since plural marking is often optional, thus the meaning might be “they always rest there”.

The Copper River is technically outside of Tlingit territory, which ends around Katalla (*Kaataanáa*, see §4.15.4.3). Nevertheless it was well known to even the southernmost Tlingit as the source of native copper which was one of the most valuable substances in the traditional Tlingit world. Native copper inspired the Tlingit name, *Eek Héeni*, which can be glossed as *eek héen-yí* |copper river-PSS|. The Ahtna people living upstream who engaged in a lively trade of native copper are known by the Tlingit as *Iḡka Kḡwáan* **[[check]]**.

4.15.4.2. Major mountains

[[Mount Saint Elias *Ÿaas'ei't'ashaa*, from Yahtse River *Ÿaas'ei*.]]

[[Mount Fairweather *Tsalḵaan* “Land of the ground squirrels”?]]

[[Devil's Thumb *Taalkunáḵku Shaa* from *Taal* “flat basket”.]]

4.15.4.3. K̄wáan and settlements

[[*Taant'a*, *Gichḵaan*, *Sanyaa*, *Hinyaa*, *Lawaak*, *T'akjik'aan*, *Kaachḵana.áak'w*, *Gantiyaakw Séedi*, *K'éix'*, *Kooyu*, *Sheet'ká* ~ *Sheey At'iká*, *Xutsnoowú*, *Aangóon*, *S'awdaan*, *Áak'w*, *Dzantik'i Héeni*, *Áatlein*, *Deisleen*, *Jilkoot*, *Deishú*, *Shgaḡwéi*, *Xunaa*, *Ḡunaxoo*, *Laxaayík*, *Yaakwdaat*, *Ḡalyáḵ*, *Kaataanaa*.]]

For the meaning of *Shtax'héen*, *Taaku*, and *Jilkáat* see the following section (§4.15.4.1).

5. *Adjectives*

Adjectives form a very small class in Tlingit. The vast majority of attributorial and predicational words are instead verbs, and the attributive *-yí* suffix on the verb is a productive method of deriving new adjective-like words from the existing stock of verbs. Even among the few adjectives that I describe here there are a few which are obviously derived from verb roots although the exact process may not be entirely clear.

Tlingit adjectives describe attributorial qualities such as “good” (*aak'é*), “young” (*yées*), “large” (*tlein*), and “thin” (*k'áatl'*). Verbs also cover the same semantic domains, e.g. *O-CL[-D, ∅]-k'ei* “O be good”, *O-CL[-D, l]-gei* “O be big”, *O-CL[-D, sh]-ḡaaḡ* “O (animal) be thin”. Thus the semantic domain cannot necessarily be a distinction between verbs and adjectives. But adjectives cannot indicate tense-aspect-mood unlike verbs, and distributionally adjectives do not appear where one would expect verbs.

In addition to the adjectives *per se*, in this chapter I also discuss a few parts of speech which have attributorial qualities but which do not behave entirely like classically adjectival words. These are specifically the number and color words. Numbers have some properties which set them apart from all other parts of speech, including adjectives, but it is convenient to discuss them here. Colors are discussed here essentially for convenience, and because linguists tend to expect colors to be adjectives.¹ In Tlingit, colors are actually ordinary unpossessable nouns with dual meanings, and a special construction is used which implies their secondary color-term meanings.

5.1. Adjectives and degree words

[[What other degree words are there besides *kúnáx* “very”?]]

1. Linguists are also unsurprised with colors as verbs, but the verb chapters are already too large.

[[Why can't *kúnáx* be used with adjectives? Can it even be used with nouns? Perhaps it's an adverb after all.]]

5.2. Attributinal and predicational adjectives

5.3. Prenominal adjectives

- 5.3.1. *aak'é* “good”
- 5.3.2. *yées* “young”
- 5.3.3. *ch'áagu* “old”
- 5.3.4. *káa* “male”
- 5.3.5. *shéech* “female”
- 5.3.6. *kustín* “giant”
- 5.3.7. *kúnáx* “very”
- 5.3.8. *aatlein* “much, lots”
- 5.3.9. *shayadihéin* “many”
- 5.3.10. *oosk'* “cute”

Perhaps from the verb root *ʔoos*? Compare *O-CL[-D, l]-ʔoos* “O be crazy, lively, noisy, never still”, *O-tu-CL[+D, ʔ]-ʔoos* “O sulk, be sulky, refuse to speak, refuse to run (of machine)”, *O-ji-CL[-D, l]-ʔoos* “meddle, handle too much”, and *O-x'a-CL[-D, l]-ʔoos* “O be talkative, gossipy, noisy” (NS73:267). If so, would have diminutive *-k'* suffix. Apparently sometimes takes *-yí* attributive suffix, thus *oosk'í shaawát* or *oosk' shaawát*, although this may be a prothetic vowel for breaking up consonant clusters, and only coincidentally looks like *-yí*, or it may have begun as such but is turning into *-yí* among the youngest speakers.

5.4. Postnominal adjectives

5.4.1. *tlein* “large”

5.4.2. *k'átsk'u* “small”

5.4.3. *yádi* “child”

5.4.4. *xookw* “dry”

5.4.5. *k'áatl'* “thin”

5.5. Deverbal adjectives and the attributive

5.5.1. Morphology of the attributive

5.5.2. Uses of the attributive

5.5.3. Differences between attributive and subordinative

5.6. Numerals

5.6.1. Subdecimal numerals

5.6.2. Old vigesimal system

5.6.3. New decimal system

5.6.4. Cardinal numerals

5.6.5. Ordinal numerals

5.7. Colors

5.7.1. Similative color construction

5.7.2. Non-similative color constructions

5.7.3. Conventional colors

5.7.4. Novel colors

6. *Adverbs*

6.1. Noun-derived

6.2. Directional-derived

6.3. Verb-derived

6.3.1. Adverbializer *-dein*

6.3.2. Abessive adverbs

7. *Particles*

The term “particle” is, in the descriptions of many languages, a sort of bucket into which all sorts of free morphemes of diverse functions are tossed. Most descriptions define the particle category by what it is not – not noun, not verb, not adjective, etc. I follow in this grand tradition by defining the Tlingit particle as specifically a free morpheme or sequence of morphemes which is not a noun, not a verb, not an adverb, and not an adjective.

There are a few generalizations that can be made about Tlingit particles. For one they are all together a closed class, in that no additional members can be added. Except for the negative and to some extent the interrogative particles, the particle class has relatively little morphosyntactic interaction with other parts of speech. Beyond these two relatively weak statements, the class is functionally vague.

Some profitable divisions can be made inside the particle class, and these divisions are probably indicative of more subtle differences between the various particles that I am as yet unable to uncover.

7.1. Focus particles

<i>Form</i>	<i>Name</i>	<i>Gloss</i>	<i>Meaning</i>
sá	Q particle	Q	wh-questions
gé	Yn particle	YN	yes-no questions
ágé	focus question	FOC.YN	focused yes-no questions
á	focus particle	FOC	focus or topicalize
kuʔaa ~ kwaa	contrastive	CONTR	“however”, “but”
ásé	deductive	DED	“oh, so that’s”
ásgé	reportative	REPT	hearsay, “reportedly”
xaa ~ xáa	softening	SOFT	“you see”
óosh	hypothetical	HYP	“as if”, “if only”
kushéi ~ kwshé	tentative	TENT	“maybe”
shágdé	dubitative	DUB	“perhaps”, “probably”
(s)dáagáa	confirmative	CONF	“indeed”, “for sure”
shéi	mirative	MIR	mild surprise
guʔáa ~ gwáa	admirative	ADMIR	strong surprise

Table 7.1: Focusing particles. Some \llbracket which? \rrbracket may take a demonstrative suffix.

- 7.1.1. Interrogatives
 - 7.1.1.1. Wh-question *sá*
 - 7.1.1.2. Yes/no-question *gé*
 - 7.1.1.3. Focused Yes/no-question *ágé*
- 7.1.2. Focus *á*
- 7.1.3. Contrastive *ku.aa*
- 7.1.4. Evidentials
 - 7.1.4.1. Deductive *ásé*
 - 7.1.4.2. Reportative *ásgé*
 - 7.1.4.3. Softening *xaa*
 - 7.1.4.4. Hypothetical *óosh*
 - 7.1.4.5. Tentative *kwshé*
 - 7.1.4.6. Dubitative *shágdé*
 - 7.1.4.7. Confirmative *(s)dáagáa*
 - 7.1.4.8. Mirative *shéi*
 - 7.1.4.9. Admirative *gu.áa*

7.2. Sentence-initial evidentials

<i>Form</i>	<i>Name</i>	<i>Gloss</i>	<i>Meaning</i>
tléil ~ tlél ~ hél ~ l	negative	NEG	“no”, “not”
lí	prohibitive	PHIB	“don’t”, “let it not be”
guʔaal	optative	OPT	“hopefully”
gwál	dubitative	DUB	“perhaps”
xaju ~ ʔaju	counterfactual	CFACT	“actually”, “in fact”
ʔashde	cogitavissive	COGIT	“I had thought”
ch’aʔaan	resumptive	RESUMP	“however”, “nonetheless”
ayáx	interpretive	INTRP	“thus”, “that’s how”
ách	explanatory	EXPLAN	“because”, “that’s why”

Table 7.2: Sentence-initial evidential particles.

- 7.2.1. Negative *tléil* “no”
- 7.2.2. Prohibitive *lí* “don’t”
- 7.2.3. Optative *gu.áal* “hopefully”
- 7.2.4. Dubitative *gwál* “maybe”
- 7.2.5. Counterfactual *xaju* “actually”
- 7.2.6. Cogitavissive *ʔashde* “I’d thought”
- 7.2.7. Resumptive *ch’a.aan* “however”
- 7.2.8. Interpretive *ayáx* “that’s why”
- 7.2.9. Explanatory *ách* “because”

7.3. Phrasal particles

7.3.1. Prephrasal particles

<i>Form</i>	<i>Name</i>	<i>Meaning</i>
ch'a		“just”, “the very”, “simply”
ch'as		“only”, “just”
ch'u		“even”, “exactly”
yéi		“thus”
tlax		“very”
ch'u tlei		“when”, “while”
ch'u tleix		“forever”
ch'u shóogu		“the same”
ch'u déix		“both”
ch'a ldakát		“all”, “every”
ch'a tlákw		“always”
ch'a yóok'		“suddenly”, “immediately”
ch'a góot		“different”, “other”
ch'a yéi		“ordinary”, “usual”

Table 7.3: Prephrasal particles.

- 7.3.1.1. *ch'a* “simply”
- 7.3.1.2. *ch'as* “only”
- 7.3.1.3. *ch'u* “even”
- 7.3.1.4. *yéi* “thus”
- 7.3.1.5. *tláx* “very”
- 7.3.1.6. *ch'u tlei* “while”
- 7.3.1.7. *ch'u tleix* “forever”
- 7.3.1.8. *ch'u déix* “both”
- 7.3.1.9. *ch'u shóogu* “the same”
- 7.3.1.10. *ch'a ldakát* “all”
- 7.3.1.11. *ch'a tlákw* “always”
- 7.3.1.12. *ch'a yóok'* “suddenly”
- 7.3.1.13. *ch'a g̃óot* “other”
- 7.3.1.14. *ch'a yéi* “usual”

7.3.2. Postphrasal particles

<i>Form</i>	<i>Name</i>	<i>Meaning</i>
tsá		“only then”
tsú		“also”, “as well”, “too”
s'é		“first”
déi		“now”, “this time”
x'wán		“be sure to”
tsé		“be sure not to”, “don't”

Table 7.4: Postphrasal particles.

7.3.2.1. *tsá* “only then”7.3.2.2. *tsú* “also”7.3.2.3. *s'é* “first”7.3.2.4. *déi* “now”7.3.2.5. *x'wan* “be sure to”7.3.2.6. *tsé* “be sure not to”

7.3.3. Mobile particles

<i>Form</i>	<i>Name</i>	<i>Meaning</i>
tléi		“just”, “simply”, “just then”
déi		“already”, “by now”, “yet”
tsu		“again”, “still”, “some more”

Table 7.5: Mobile particles.

7.3.3.1. *tléi* “just”7.3.3.2. *déi* “already”7.3.3.3. *tsu* “again”

8. *Verb structure*

The verb in Tlingit is the crowning glory of the language in terms of its flexibility, expressiveness, and complexity. Like all Na-Dene languages, the Tlingit verb has been the object of the majority of analytical efforts since at least Swanton (1911). Out of 100 pages of his *Grammatical notes on the language of the Tlingit Indians* (1917), Boas devoted 20 pages to the verb. Story's *A morphological study of Tlingit* (1917) is almost entirely focused on verb morphology, with only 2 sections discussing nouns and other topics. Leer's dissertation *The schetic categories of the Tlingit verb* addresses the morphology and semantics of the tense-mood-aspect ("schetic") system of the verb in 511 pages.

8.1. Macrostructure of the verb

Table 8.1 presents the templatic structure of the Tlingit verb. The column labeled "Leer (1991)" is the template used by Jeff Leer in his dissertation on the Tlingit tense-mood-aspect ("schetic") system (1991). The column labeled "Cable & Crippen" is the flatter template proposed by Seth Cable (1991) which I have adopted with the addition of the suffixes and some other minor modifications. Table 8.2 lists all the known affixes which appear in the verb.

In this grammar I am adopting a templatic, slot-and-filler, position class analysis of the verb. In the literature on Athabaskan languages there has been some extensive debate on the legitimacy of a templatic analysis of the verb, and to some extent the criticism also applies to Tlingit. Hoijer (1939) was apparently the first to use a template to describe Navajo. Notably, Sapir did not at any time use a template (1916), and it seems that Whorf had some reservations against a strict ordering as well (1956). Even just after Hoijer's introduction of the template analysis, Reichard (1940) dissented. Nonetheless, templates have been continuously used since throughout the Athabaskan family.

Krauss deliberately has avoided templates in his reconstruction of Proto-

	<i>Cable & Crippen</i>	<i>Leer (191)</i>
<i>disjunct</i>	+17 preverbs	+8 proclitic adjunct phrases
	+16 reciprocal & distributive	+7 b number prefixes
	+15 plural number	a ”
	+14 object	+6 b incorporated obj. pronominals
	+13 areal	
	+12 alienable incorporated nouns	a incorporated alienable nouns
	+11 inalienable incorporated nouns	+5 c incorporated inalienable nouns
<i>conjunct</i>	+10 vertical surface <i>ya-</i>	b ”
	+9 horizontal surface <i>ka-</i>	a ”
	+8 self-benefactive	+4 e schetic prefixes
	+7 outer aspect/conjugation	d ”
	+6 irrealis	c ”
	+5 inner aspect/conjugation	b ”
	+4 perfective	a ”
	+3 inner distributive	+3 distributive prefix
	+2 subject	+2 subject pronominals
	+1 classifier	+1 classifier
	0 root	0 ROOT
<i>suffix</i>	-1 derivation	-1 derivational suffixes
	-2 duration	-2 a inner durative suffixes b outer durative suffixes
	-3 stem variation	-3 inner mode suffixes
	-4 modes	-4 outer mode suffixes
	-5 modes	-5 epimode & clause type suffixes
	-6 postverbal auxiliaries	

Table 8.1: Tlingit verb template. Prefixes are positive, suffixes are negative. Suffix classifications for the *Cable & Crippen* column are tentative.

Position	Affixes
+17	(F) \bar{g} unayéi ~ \bar{g} unéi=, áa=, shóo=, héeni=, gági=, éeǵi=, daaǵi= (E2) kut=, yux=, yaax=, héenx=, ux=, kwáakx=, yedx=, yāanax ~ yā'nax _T = (E1) yan*=, neil*=, haa*=, yóo*=, kux*=, kux*= (D) kei=, yei=, yeek ~ yeik ~ i'k _T =, daak=, daak= (C) yéi ~ ye' _T = (B) yaa= (A) yaa=, yoo=
+16	da _x -, woosh-
+15	has ~ s-
+14	xat ~ ax-, haa-, i-, yee-, ash-, a ~ ∅-, ku ~ kaa-, at-, aa-, sh ~ ∅-
+13	ku-
+12	yaan-, shakux-, yata-, x'asakw-, gax-, xee ~ xei-, kee ~ kei-, yee ~ yei-, kanik-, ya _{ka} -, saa-, aan-, naa-, sha.axw-, yakw-, hin-
+11	ji-, x'a ~ k'a-, tu-, sha-, shu-, lu-, se ~ sa-, xa-, gu-, ta-, daa-, xoo-, xan-, x'aa-, t'éi-, t'aa-, yik-, yee-, ki-, gin-, xi-, s'aan-, lidíx'-, wak-, s'ak-, x'us-, s'ee-, duk-, laka-, tl'ak-, keey-, tóox'-, x'atu-, tukx'e ~ tuk'e-, daa.it-, tax'-
+10	ya-
+9	ka-
+8	ga-
+7	ga-, gā-
+6	u-
+5	∅-, na-, gā-
+4	yū-
+3	daǵa ~ da _x -
+2	xa-, tu-, ee-, yi-, ∅-, du-, du-
+1	CL[<i>d, s, i</i>]: <i>d</i> ∈ {+D, -D}; <i>s</i> ∈ {∅, s, l, sh}; <i>i</i> ∈ {+I, I}
0	root
-1	-án-, -shán-, -ch, -ákw, -aa-, -xaa-, -yí-, -ee-, -k(w), -(ch')ál', -k, -nas, -nás', -kát'
-2	(A) -', -k, -x, -ch (B) -t, -x', -t', -s', -l'
-3	-, -', -', -y', -n
-4	-ch, -nee ~ ee, -ín ~ ún
-5	-ee, -een, -(ee)k, -yi
-6	=nooch ~ neech _I ~ nukch _Y , =noojeen ~ ?neejeen _S , =nóok(w) ~ néekw _S , =núgwni ~ nígwni _S , =ǵanúgun ~ ǵanígún _I ~ ǵanikw _S

Table 8.2: Tlingit verb affixes. E1 preverbs take certain case suffixes. Subscripts mark dialect-specific forms (T: Tongass, S: Southern, I: Interior, Y: Yakutat).

Athabaskan and Proto-Na-Dene [cite]. Kari [cite] points out a number of flaws in templatic analysis, particularly the qualifiers; his solution is to propose “zones” wherein the ordering is more flexible, but zones themselves are fixed. Kari notes that templates are not in and of themselves a model of word formation, and later proposes a model for the Ahtna language [cite].

Rice (2000) proposed and defended an analysis of verb structure using the Government and Binding framework, with semantic scope justifying the ordering relationships of the constituents.

Templatic complexity in analyses has increased markedly over time [examples], but things seem to have stabilized lately.

The Tlingit verb can be divided into three domains, namely the DISJUNCT DOMAIN, CONJUNCT DOMAIN, and SUFFIX DOMAIN. The disjunct and conjunct domains were named by [Kari?] for the Athabaskan languages. In that family the conjunct domain extends leftward from the root through the classifier, first/second subject, aspect prefixes, and the qualifier prefixes. Depending on the analysis, the conjunct domain may include the third person subject prefixes and the objects (e.g. Rice 2000), or it may not (e.g. [Kibrik. Who else? Hoijer? Kari?]). The disjunct domain starts from where the conjunct domain leaves off and continues leftwards through the incorporates, distributive, iterative, multiple, areal, and the preverbs. Depending on the analysis, the disjunct domain may also cover the adjunct phrases which are lexically specified but not part of the verb. [Justifications for the disjunct and conjunct domains.]

The Tlingit division between disjunct and conjunct domains is not as well defined as is done for Athabaskan languages. I have applied them on the basis of analogy with Athabaskan languages, and there are some useful distinctions between the two domains, but the exact division is largely stipulative rather than phonologically or morphologically justified. Evidence for separation phonologically is that vowels in the conjunct domain cannot have high tone, whereas there are several prefixes (incorporated nouns and preverbs) which have inherent high tone. Another distinction is that prefixes in the disjunct domain always preserve their underlying vowels, whereas prefixes in the conjunct domain lose them in various contexts.

8.1.1. Disjunct domain

8.1.2. Conjunct domain

I have assigned the term “conjunct domain” to prefixes spanning from the classifier leftwards to the “surface” prefixes *ka-* and *yä-*.

8.1.3. Suffix domain

8.1.4. Leer’s “Principle of Templatic Attraction”

8.1.5. Comparison with Athabaskan and Eyak

	<i>Slot</i>	<i>Group</i>
	proclitic adjunct preverb	
<i>disjunct</i>	areal multiple iterative distributive	} quantificational elements
	incorporate	
	number object 3rd person subject transitivity decrease qualifiers (<i>d, n, γ</i>)	
<i>conjunct</i>	inceptive egressive conative	} subsituation aspect
	achievement (<i>n</i> -) accomplishment (<i>s</i> -) semelfactive (<i>i</i> -) activity (<i>γ</i> -)	} situation aspect
	imperfective perfective optative future	} viewpoint aspect
	1st & 2nd subject classifier	
<i>stem</i>	root aspect suffix enclitic	

Table 8.3: Generalized Athabaskan verb template, adapted from Rice (2000).

8.2. Lexical specification: The verb theme

The **THEME** is the unit of lexical specification for verbs in the Na-Dene family. **[[Cite coinage.]]** Elements which are lexically specified are thus termed **THEMATIC**. This terminology unfortunately collides with the description of semantic relationships between noun phrases and verbs as “thematic roles”, as well as the term “theme” that is sometimes used interchangeably with “patient”. **[[Cite.]]** Because the idea of verb themes is well developed in Athabaskan literature I will maintain the tradition here.

A verb theme is composed of a root, two components of the classifier, argument slots, a conjugation prefix, and other assorted prefixes and proclitics. Certain suffixes may also be lexically specified, particularly the -1 derivational suffixes. In addition some verb themes also specify external arguments, usually a noun phrase marked with a specific local case, but sometimes more complex phrases occur. In representations of verb themes the argument slots are given as *S* and *O*, and any external argument is given as *P*.

8.2.1. Structure of the theme

Verb themes are usually represented as a string of discontinuous morphemes: *O-ÿa-S-CL[-D, l]- t'aak* “S move heavy O a little at a time”. An example of this theme shows how the fully inflected form has other prefixes which intervene between the thematic elements.

- (22) *O-ÿa-S-CL[-D, l]-t'aaḱ* “S move heavy O a little at a time”
 aḱ yaagú yakwḱalat'áaḱ
 aḱ yaakw-ÿú \emptyset -ÿa-ga-u-ḡa-ḱa-la-t'áaḱ
 1SG.PSS boat-PSS 3O-VSFC-GCNJ-IRR-GCNJ-1SG.S-CL[-D, l, -I]-shift.around
 “I’m going to move my boat (down to the water)” (NS73:137)

In this example, the thematic prefixes are the vertical surface (vsfc) prefix *ÿa-*, the D and S components of the classifier (CL[-D, l]), and the verb root, as well as the open slots for the subject and object arguments. The other prefixes, namely the *ga*-conjugation/aspect, irrealis *u-*, *ḡa-* conjugation/aspect, and the I component of the classifier (CL[-I]), are all inflectional and are thus not specified in the lexicon.

The lexical-morphological structure of a verb theme can be more explicitly represented as a bundle of features and variables in an attribute-value matrix [cite] akin to those used in HPSG [cite].

(23) <i>O-ÿa-S-CL[-D, l]-t'aaḱ</i> :	<table style="border-collapse: collapse; width: 100%;"> <tr> <td style="padding: 5px;">root</td> <td style="padding: 5px;"> <table style="border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr><td style="padding: 2px 10px;">phon</td><td style="padding: 2px 10px;"><i>t'aaḱ</i></td></tr> <tr><td style="padding: 2px 10px;">open?</td><td style="padding: 2px 10px;">-</td></tr> <tr><td style="padding: 2px 10px;">variable?</td><td style="padding: 2px 10px;">+</td></tr> <tr><td style="padding: 2px 10px;">vartype</td><td style="padding: 2px 10px;">long-high</td></tr> </table> </td> </tr> <tr> <td style="padding: 5px;">classifier</td> <td style="padding: 5px;"> <table style="border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr><td style="padding: 2px 10px;">D</td><td style="padding: 2px 10px;">-</td></tr> <tr><td style="padding: 2px 10px;">S</td><td style="padding: 2px 10px;">l</td></tr> </table> </td> </tr> <tr> <td style="padding: 5px;">category</td> <td style="padding: 5px;">6-processive</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="padding: 5px;">conjugation</td> <td style="padding: 5px;">\emptyset-</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="padding: 5px;">noun-class</td> <td style="padding: 5px;">-</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="padding: 5px;">subject (S)</td> <td style="padding: 5px;">any</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="padding: 5px;">object (O)</td> <td style="padding: 5px;">[-human]</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="padding: 5px;">adjunct (P)</td> <td style="padding: 5px;">-</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="padding: 5px;">areal?</td> <td style="padding: 5px;">-</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="padding: 5px;">incorporates</td> <td style="padding: 5px;">⟨HSFC(<i>ÿa-</i>)⟩</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="padding: 5px;">preverbs</td> <td style="padding: 5px;">⟨⟩</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="padding: 5px;">suffixes</td> <td style="padding: 5px;">⟨⟩</td> </tr> </table>	root	<table style="border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr><td style="padding: 2px 10px;">phon</td><td style="padding: 2px 10px;"><i>t'aaḱ</i></td></tr> <tr><td style="padding: 2px 10px;">open?</td><td style="padding: 2px 10px;">-</td></tr> <tr><td style="padding: 2px 10px;">variable?</td><td style="padding: 2px 10px;">+</td></tr> <tr><td style="padding: 2px 10px;">vartype</td><td style="padding: 2px 10px;">long-high</td></tr> </table>	phon	<i>t'aaḱ</i>	open?	-	variable?	+	vartype	long-high	classifier	<table style="border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr><td style="padding: 2px 10px;">D</td><td style="padding: 2px 10px;">-</td></tr> <tr><td style="padding: 2px 10px;">S</td><td style="padding: 2px 10px;">l</td></tr> </table>	D	-	S	l	category	6-processive	conjugation	\emptyset -	noun-class	-	subject (S)	any	object (O)	[-human]	adjunct (P)	-	areal?	-	incorporates	⟨HSFC(<i>ÿa-</i>)⟩	preverbs	⟨⟩	suffixes	⟨⟩
root	<table style="border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr><td style="padding: 2px 10px;">phon</td><td style="padding: 2px 10px;"><i>t'aaḱ</i></td></tr> <tr><td style="padding: 2px 10px;">open?</td><td style="padding: 2px 10px;">-</td></tr> <tr><td style="padding: 2px 10px;">variable?</td><td style="padding: 2px 10px;">+</td></tr> <tr><td style="padding: 2px 10px;">vartype</td><td style="padding: 2px 10px;">long-high</td></tr> </table>	phon	<i>t'aaḱ</i>	open?	-	variable?	+	vartype	long-high																												
phon	<i>t'aaḱ</i>																																				
open?	-																																				
variable?	+																																				
vartype	long-high																																				
classifier	<table style="border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr><td style="padding: 2px 10px;">D</td><td style="padding: 2px 10px;">-</td></tr> <tr><td style="padding: 2px 10px;">S</td><td style="padding: 2px 10px;">l</td></tr> </table>	D	-	S	l																																
D	-																																				
S	l																																				
category	6-processive																																				
conjugation	\emptyset -																																				
noun-class	-																																				
subject (S)	any																																				
object (O)	[-human]																																				
adjunct (P)	-																																				
areal?	-																																				
incorporates	⟨HSFC(<i>ÿa-</i>)⟩																																				
preverbs	⟨⟩																																				
suffixes	⟨⟩																																				

This representation makes explicit a number of things that are not normally indicated in the usual representation of a verb theme. The types of subject and object arguments that are permitted is not normally represented in a textual

representation of a theme. Here instead it is explicit that no human object is permitted, only nonhuman objects or objects which are not specified for humanity. Subjects in contrast can be of any type. The conjugation prefix is not usually specified in a theme, but here it is explicit. Root type and tone information is also not usually specified, but here again it is explicit. The disadvantage of course is that this takes up an enormous amount of space, even with unreadably small font sizes.

Another example below is the verb *ku-CL[-D, ∅]-k'ei* “be good weather”. In this verb the verb root is open and variable, with the long-high variation type. The classifier’s D component is *-D* and the S component *∅*. The verb theme category is *ÿ-stative*, it uses the *∅*-conjugation prefix, and it does not classify nouns. The theme takes neither subject nor object, and is not specified for any adjuncts. It includes an areal, and has no incorporates, preverbs, or derivational suffixes.

(24) <i>ku-CL[-D, ∅]-k'ei</i> :	<table style="border-collapse: collapse; width: 100%;"> <tr> <td style="padding: 5px;">root</td> <td style="padding: 5px;"> <table style="border-collapse: collapse; border-left: 1px solid black; border-right: 1px solid black;"> <tr> <td style="padding: 5px;">phon</td> <td style="padding: 5px;"><i>k'e</i></td> </tr> <tr> <td style="padding: 5px;">open?</td> <td style="padding: 5px;">+</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="padding: 5px;">variable?</td> <td style="padding: 5px;">+</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="padding: 5px;">vartype</td> <td style="padding: 5px;">long-high</td> </tr> </table> </td> </tr> <tr> <td style="padding: 5px;">classifier</td> <td style="padding: 5px;"> <table style="border-collapse: collapse; border-left: 1px solid black; border-right: 1px solid black;"> <tr> <td style="padding: 5px;">D</td> <td style="padding: 5px;">-</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="padding: 5px;">S</td> <td style="padding: 5px;">∅</td> </tr> </table> </td> </tr> <tr> <td style="padding: 5px;">category</td> <td style="padding: 5px;"><i>ÿ-stative</i></td> </tr> <tr> <td style="padding: 5px;">noun-class</td> <td style="padding: 5px;">-</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="padding: 5px;">conjugation</td> <td style="padding: 5px;"><i>∅</i>-</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="padding: 5px;">subject (S)</td> <td style="padding: 5px;">-</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="padding: 5px;">object (O)</td> <td style="padding: 5px;">-</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="padding: 5px;">adjunct (P)</td> <td style="padding: 5px;">-</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="padding: 5px;">areal?</td> <td style="padding: 5px;">+</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="padding: 5px;">incorporates</td> <td style="padding: 5px;">⟨⟩</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="padding: 5px;">preverbs</td> <td style="padding: 5px;">⟨⟩</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="padding: 5px;">suffixes</td> <td style="padding: 5px;">⟨⟩</td> </tr> </table>	root	<table style="border-collapse: collapse; border-left: 1px solid black; border-right: 1px solid black;"> <tr> <td style="padding: 5px;">phon</td> <td style="padding: 5px;"><i>k'e</i></td> </tr> <tr> <td style="padding: 5px;">open?</td> <td style="padding: 5px;">+</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="padding: 5px;">variable?</td> <td style="padding: 5px;">+</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="padding: 5px;">vartype</td> <td style="padding: 5px;">long-high</td> </tr> </table>	phon	<i>k'e</i>	open?	+	variable?	+	vartype	long-high	classifier	<table style="border-collapse: collapse; border-left: 1px solid black; border-right: 1px solid black;"> <tr> <td style="padding: 5px;">D</td> <td style="padding: 5px;">-</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="padding: 5px;">S</td> <td style="padding: 5px;">∅</td> </tr> </table>	D	-	S	∅	category	<i>ÿ-stative</i>	noun-class	-	conjugation	<i>∅</i> -	subject (S)	-	object (O)	-	adjunct (P)	-	areal?	+	incorporates	⟨⟩	preverbs	⟨⟩	suffixes	⟨⟩
root	<table style="border-collapse: collapse; border-left: 1px solid black; border-right: 1px solid black;"> <tr> <td style="padding: 5px;">phon</td> <td style="padding: 5px;"><i>k'e</i></td> </tr> <tr> <td style="padding: 5px;">open?</td> <td style="padding: 5px;">+</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="padding: 5px;">variable?</td> <td style="padding: 5px;">+</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="padding: 5px;">vartype</td> <td style="padding: 5px;">long-high</td> </tr> </table>	phon	<i>k'e</i>	open?	+	variable?	+	vartype	long-high																												
phon	<i>k'e</i>																																				
open?	+																																				
variable?	+																																				
vartype	long-high																																				
classifier	<table style="border-collapse: collapse; border-left: 1px solid black; border-right: 1px solid black;"> <tr> <td style="padding: 5px;">D</td> <td style="padding: 5px;">-</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="padding: 5px;">S</td> <td style="padding: 5px;">∅</td> </tr> </table>	D	-	S	∅																																
D	-																																				
S	∅																																				
category	<i>ÿ-stative</i>																																				
noun-class	-																																				
conjugation	<i>∅</i> -																																				
subject (S)	-																																				
object (O)	-																																				
adjunct (P)	-																																				
areal?	+																																				
incorporates	⟨⟩																																				
preverbs	⟨⟩																																				
suffixes	⟨⟩																																				

[[I’m almost certainly missing a couple of things that are lexically specified. The theme categories from Leer don’t tell us about the semantic category of the verb (motion, eventive, dimensional, etc.). Does this need to be included for the morphology, or is it strictly semantic?]]

- 8.2.1.1. Obligatory elements
- 8.2.1.2. Optional elements
- 8.2.2. Lexical specification beyond the verb
 - 8.2.2.1. Direct arguments
 - 8.2.2.2. Local arguments
 - 8.2.2.3. Focused arguments
- 8.2.3. Comparison with Athabaskan and Eyak verb themes
- 8.2.4. Verb word formation
 - 8.2.4.1. Kari's cyclic model for Athabaskan
 - 8.2.4.2. A Tlingit tiered model

8.3. The root

8.3.1. Root meanings and glosses

The exact meaning of many verb roots is somewhat vague because most roots do not exist alone; instead they only occur in verb themes with additional morphemes that contribute to the lexical meaning. Thus it is often difficult to gloss verb roots. Tlingit roots vary in abstractness in a way very similar to that found in Athabaskan languages. Compare Young & Morgan (1987:128) on Navajo:

The concept expressed by the verbal root and its derived stems may be quite specific, as *yáqá'* (Perfective), “ingest food, eat”, or *lóóz* (Perfective), “lead one object”; or root/stem meaning may be broad and general to the point of abstraction, capable of multifaceted lexical representation, as *kaad* (Perfective/Imperfective), denoting “action, movement, state of being or shape characterized by an essential quality of flatness and expansiveness”.

Some Athabaskanists have avoided the issue of how to gloss roots by simply not glossing them. I have endeavored to gloss everything as completely as possible, so this is not an option. Thus I am forced to deal with this problem. The method I use to determine the meaning of a verb root is to compare the meanings of a number of verb themes which are built upon the root. For example, the following verb themes illustrate the root *x'aas'* which clearly has a simple, concrete meaning “slice, cut” (NS73:330).

- (25) a. *O-S-CL[-D, Ø]-x'aas'*
 “slice (esp. preparing fish for drying)”
- b. *O-S-CL[-D, l]-x'aas'*
 “slice open, split open (for drying)”
- c. *O-ka-S-CL[-D, Ø]-x'aas'*
 “slice, cut into thin slices (food for cooking); rip, saw with the grain (boards)”
- d. *O-ka-S-CL[-D, l]-x'aas'*
 “slice (food); bite (shark)”

Unfortunately many verb roots are not so clear because the various themes built around them have more divergent meanings. The root *tsoow* is one such root where each theme has a sense of vertical erection or vertical movement,

but the essential meaning of the root is difficult to pin down precisely as the following themes show (NS73:297).

- (26) a. *P-náx O-S-CL[-D, Ø]-tsoow*
 “place upright (esp. stick like objects)”
- b. *P O-S-CL[-D, l]-tsoow*
 “connect up, connect together; splice”
- c. *P-náx O-S-CL[-D, l]-tsoow*
 “place upright”
- d. *O-CL[+D, l]-tsoow*
 “move household (usually temporarily)”
- e. *ka-S-CL[+D, l]-tsoow*
 “plant (using digging stick)”
- f. *yan=tóox’-S-CL[-D, Ø]-tsoow*
 “kneel”
- g. *O?-s’ee-S-CL[-D, l]-tsoow*
 “frown (with effort or concentration), furrow the brow”
- h. *kei=O-ji-S-CL[-D, l]-tsoow*
 “raise the hand”

The semantic range of some verb roots is so large that it is essentially impossible to assign a single meaning. The root *nook*₁ refers to sitting down or standing up, but a homophonous root *nook*₂ has a variety of themes with widely varying meanings. The following is an exhaustive list from the *Tlingit Verb Dictionary* (NS73:282).

- (27) a. *tú-: O-S-CL[-D, Ø]-nook*₂
 “feel (physical or emotional)”
- b. *P-CASE S-CL[-D, Ø]-nook*₂
 “act like; feel like (esp. emotional); be willing, want to, agree to”
- c. *jín-: O-S-CL[+D, Ø]-nook*₂
 “touch, feel with hands”
- d. *x’ei O-S-CL[+D, Ø]-nook*₂
 “taste, sample”

- e. *tléil jin-daa O-S-CL[+D, ∅]-nook₂*
“misplace, mislay”
- f. *P sh-S-CL[+D, ∅]-nook₂*
“feel (esp. physical sensation)”
- g. *O-du-CL[-D, ∅]-nook₂*
“blow, be felt (of wind); taste”
- h. *P-x' yán-gāa O-du-CL[-D, ∅]-nook₂*
“suit, look well on, be becoming to; be suitable, fitting (in behavior and appearance), be approved of”
- i. *O-S-CL[-D, l]-nook₂*
“notify, inform, bring news (esp. serious or important news)”
- j. *kāa tú-: O-S-CL[-D, l]-nook₂*
“persuade, talk into willingness to do”
- k. *yán=O-ka-S-CL[-D, s]-nook₂*
“prove, verify, find out and be sure of; investigate, make trial of, test out”
- l. *tléil tú-gāa O-ka-S-CL[-D, sh]-nook₂*
“dislike, disapprove”
- m. *O-ka-S-CL[-D, l]-nook₂*
“doubt someone’s ability, lack confidence in, consider unworthy”
- n. *P tu-S-CL[-D, ∅]-nook₂*
“suffer (physically or mentally)”
- o. *P-x' tu-S-CL[-D, l]-nook₂*
“persecute, cause to suffer (either physically or mentally)”
- p. *P-dáx ji-S-CL[+D, ∅]-nook₂*
“desire, be anxious to acquire”
- q. *O-sha-ka-CL[+D, ∅]-nook₂*
“swell up, increase in volume by swelling, (fig.) multiply, increase in quantity”
- r. *P-dáx x'a-S-CL[+D, ∅]-nook₂*
“be hungry for, be anxious to eat”

- s. *kaa x'éi-dáx x'a-S-CL[+D, ∅]-nook₂*
 “be hungry for, be anxious to eat”
- t. *P ku-S-CL[-D, ∅]-nook₂*
 “behave like, do, act (in certain way, be customary to)”

It is clear that the basic meaning of *nook₂* has something to do with feeling and sensation, as in the first eight themes. But some themes do not seem to have much to do with sensation, yet apparently feature the same root. Either the lexicographers were wrong to lump the exceptional themes together with the nonexceptional ones, or we must accept that the verb root does not have as concrete a meaning as we might like. The latter case is most likely true, and we are left with the problem of glossing the root in some reasonable manner.

There are a few approaches possible for glossing such semantically wide-ranging roots. One is to not gloss them at all, instead using some inscrutable label like ROOT. This might be accurate but it is woefully uninformative. Another approach is to label the root with its most common meaning, in the case of *nook₂* with something like “feel” or “sense”. This might be satisfactory in most cases, but can occasionally be confusing as in the following example.

- (28) *xóon* *wuduwanúk*
xóon *∅-ÿu-du-ÿa-núk*
 north.wind 3O-PFV-INDH.S-CL[-D, ∅, +I]-feel
 “the north wind is blowing” (NS73:32)

The last approach is to gloss the verb root with its English translational equivalent. This is unsatisfactory in some cases because it is misleading, but in others where there is no clearly dominant meaning among the various themes it is somewhat more useful. In this grammar I use a mix of the common meaning and translational equivalent approaches, depending on the particular verb. Since the *Tlingit verb dictionary* (NS73) has examples of most verbs, the reader always has the option of checking my example glosses with that source.

8.3.2. Root variation and apophony

Verb roots in Tlingit vary in the length and tone of the vowel according to the particular conjugation of the verb. This particular type of variation will be called **ROOT APOPHONY**, since there are other types of variation that are lexical rather than being associated with certain conjugations (see for example §8.3.7).

8.3.2.1. Closed root variation

8.3.2.2. Open root variation

8.3.3. Invariable and disyllabic roots

8.3.4. Root suppletion

8.3.4.1. Plural suppletion

8.3.4.2. Classificatory suppletion

8.3.5. Irregular roots

8.3.6. Root polysemy

8.3.7. Root tuples

8.4. Prefixes and proclitics

The majority of verb structure appears to the left of the root, in the form of prefixes and proclitics. The conjunct domain (see §8.1, §8.1.2) comprises the classifier (+1), subject (+2), distributive (+3), tense-mood-aspect (+4–+7), and self-benefactive (+8) prefixes, along with the horizontal and vertical surface prefixes (+9, +10). The disjunct domain comprises the incorporates (+11, +12), areal (+13), objects (+14), plural (+15), reciprocal and distributive (+16), and the preverbs (+17).

The prefixes are a mix of inflectional and derivational elements, with the classifier being a portmanteau of both types, the subjects, distributive, and perfective being inflectional, the other tense-mood-aspect prefixes being both inflectional and derivational, the self-benefactive, horizontal and vertical surface, incorporates, and areal all being derivational, the objects, reciprocal, and distributive being inflectional, and the preverbs being derivational. This mixture is a clear violation of Greenberg’s morphological universal 28: “if both the derivation and inflection follow the root, or they both precede the root, the derivation is always between the root and the inflection” [cite Greenberg 1963:93]. If the categories of inflection and derivation are diluted or even discarded then this ceases to be a problem, but the distinction is still useful in considering thematic structure. The other option is to discard the universal or at least downgrade it to a sort of tendency.

8.4.1. Classifier (+1)

		-D		+D	
		-I	+I	-I	+I
<i>series</i>	∅	∅-	yə-	da-	di-
	s	sa-	si-	s-	dzi-
	l	la-	li-	l-	dli-
	sh	sha-	shi-	sh-	ji-

Table 8.4: Tlingit classifier system

8.4.1.1. D component

8.4.1.1.1. Middle voice

8.4.1.1.2. Revertive agreement

8.4.1.1.3. Thematic and irregular uses

8.4.1.1.4. Change in \emptyset -series with subject *du-*

There is a rather obscure phenomenon associated with the indefinite human and third person obviate subject prefixes *du-* that occurs in classifiers of the type CL[+D, \emptyset]-. Whenever a subject prefix of the shape *du-* appears in a verb theme which normally has \emptyset in the S component and +D in the classifier, instead the D component changes to -D.

(29) *O-S-CL[+D, Ø]-naa* “S drink O”

- a. héen xwadínaa
 héen ỵu-xa-di-naa
 water PFV-1SG.S-CL[+D, Ø, +I]-drink
 “I drank water”
- b. héen wuduwanaa
 héen ỵu-du-ya-naa
 water PFV-INDH.S-CL[-D, Ø, +I]-drink
 “somebody drank water”

8.4.1.2. S component

8.4.1.2.1. Transitivity

8.4.1.2.2. Causativity

8.4.1.2.3. Noun classification

8.4.1.2.4. Negatives

8.4.1.2.5. Attitude and affect

8.4.1.2.6. Borrowing

8.4.1.2.7. Thematic and irregular uses

8.4.1.3. I component

8.4.1.3.1. Realis

8.4.1.3.2. Irrealis disagreement

8.4.1.3.3. Attributives and deverbal nouns

- 8.4.1.4. Comparison with Athabaskan and Eyak
 - 8.4.1.4.1. The Proto-Athabaskan classifier
 - 8.4.1.4.2. The Eyak classifier and the Proto-Athabaskan-Eyak classifier
 - 8.4.1.4.3. Reconstruction of the Proto-Na-Dene classifier
 - 8.4.1.4.4. Semantics of middle voice across the family
 - 8.4.1.4.5. Complexity of the Tlingit S component
 - 8.4.1.4.6. Thematic uses across the family

		-D		+D
series	∅	*∅-	*d∅-	
	ɫ	*ɫ-	*ɫ∅- ~ *l(∅)-	

Table 8.5: Prior Proto-Athabaskan classifier system (Leer 1990:93)

		-D		+D
		-I	+I	
series	∅	*∅-	*ñ∅-	*d∅-
	ɫ	*ɫ-	*ñ∅-ɫ-	*ɫ∅- ~ l∅-

Table 8.6: Current Proto-Athabaskan classifier system (Leer 2008:22)

		-D		+D	
		-I	+I	-I	+I
series	∅	∅-	yi-∅-	d∅-	di-
	ɫ	ɫ-	yi-ɫ-	ɫ∅-	ti-

Table 8.7: Eyak classifier system (Krauss 1969)

		-D		+D	
		-I	+I	-I	+I
series	∅	*∅	*yi-∅-	*∅-d∅-	*yi-∅-d∅-
	s	*s-	*yi-s-	*s-d∅-	*yi-s-d∅-
	ɫ	*ɫ-	*yi-ɫ-	*ɫ-d∅-	*yi-ɫ-d∅-

Table 8.8: Proto-Na-Dene classifier system (Leer 2008:22)

8.4.2. Prefix coalescence from +1 to +14

The prefixes from the classifier (+1) to the objects (+14) show rather dramatic morphophonological changes when they appear together in various combinations, and these changes are hard to express both clearly and concisely. Leer (191:175-202) opts for the concision over clarity, representing the system of “morphophonemic rules for prefix combinations” as a system of 21 rules in a generative phonology style, or actually 49 if all the sub-rules are counted separately, including feeding, bleeding, and counterbleeding, though without any counterfeeding. This presentation is difficult to comprehend even for someone familiar with Tlingit phonology. Leer’s tables are somewhat more useful but suffer from poor layout choices which makes them also difficult to use.

[[Talk about Seth’s analysis in an OT framework which describes the system as a metrical (syncope) phenomenon.]]

The prefix coalescence rules are morphophonological rules based on the shape of the classifier. There is a mismatch in forms between the \emptyset series classifiers – i.e. those with \emptyset in the S component – and the non- \emptyset series classifiers. This is because the coalescence rules are phonological rather than morphological, and so they are dependent on the phonological form of the classifier rather than its morphological features. Each non- \emptyset classifier has one of the forms *C-*, *Ca-*, or *Ci-*. The classifier $\text{CL}[-\text{D}, \text{s}, +\text{I}]$ has the form *s-* and thus falls into the *C-* category, the classifier $\text{CL}[-\text{D}, \text{sh}, -\text{I}]$ has the form *sha-* and thus falls into the *Ca-* category, and the classifier $\text{CL}[\text{+D}, \text{l}, +\text{I}]$ has the form *dli-* and thus falls into the *Ci-* category. In contrast the \emptyset classifiers can have any of the forms $\emptyset-$, *yä-*, *Ca-*, or *Ci-*; the form *yä-* is treated differently from *Ca-* because it has unique behaviors due to the consonant *ÿ*. In table 8.9 on page 126 the two groups of classifier shapes are given along with the various classifiers that fall into each category.

The prefixes which participate in prefix coalescence can be divided into two major classes, the coalescing prefixes and the edge prefixes. The coalescing prefixes are those whose underlying form is obscured to some extent by coalescence, and the class comprises the classifiers, the subjects, the conjugation/aspect prefixes, and the irrealis. This is thus all the positions from +1 to +7, but excluding the distributive in +3. [[Need a couple of paradigms of the distributive.]] The edge prefixes comprise the self-benefactive, the horizontal and vertical surface prefixes, the incorporated nouns, the areal, and the objects. Thus this class spans from +8 to +14. Not all edge prefixes matter for coalescence, since only those which have a CV(:) shape participate. Thus the horizontal and vertical surface prefixes will always participate, but only some of the objects and

incorporated nouns participate since in those positions there are many prefixes which have shapes other than CV(:).

Shape	Features	Series			Shape	Features	Series
		l	s	sh			∅
C-	CL[+D, -I]	l-	s-	sh-	∅-	CL[-D, -I]	∅-
Ca-	CL[-D, -I]	la-	sa-	sha-	ÿa-	CL[-D, +I]	ÿa-
Ci-	CL[+D, +I]	dli-	dzi-	ji-	Ca-	CL[+D, -I]	da-
Ci-	CL[-D, +I]	li-	si-	shi-	Ci-	CL[+D, +I]	di-

(a) Non-∅ shapes. (b) ∅ shapes.

Table 8.9: Classifier shapes.

Prefixes	Classifier shape				
	∅-	C-	Ca-	Ci-	ÿa-
ÿu-xa-	xwa-	xwaC-	xwaCa-	xwaCi-	xwaa-
ÿu-tu-	wutoo-	wutooC-	wutuCa-	wutuCi-	wutuwa-
ÿu-i-	ÿi-	ÿiC-	ÿiCa-	ÿiCi-	ÿee- ~ iÿa-
ÿu-ÿi-	ÿeeÿ-	ÿeeÿC-	ÿeeÿCa-	ÿeeÿCi-	ÿeeÿ-
ÿu-du-	wudu-	wuduC-	—	wuduCi-	wuduwa-
ÿu-∅-	wu-	wuC-	—	wuCi-	woo- ~ uwa-
CV-ÿu-xa-	CVxwa-	CVxwaC-	CVxwCa-	CVxwCi-	CVxwaa-
CV-ÿu-tu-	CVwtoo-	CVwtooC-	CVwtuCa-	CVwtuCi-	CVwtuwa-
CV-ÿu-i-	CVÿi-	CVÿiC-	CVÿCa-	CVÿCi-	Ceeÿa-
CV-ÿu-ÿi-	CVÿeeÿ-	CVÿeeÿC-	CVÿeeÿCa-	CVÿeeÿCi-	CVÿeeÿ-
CV-ÿu-du-	CVwdu-	CVwduC-	—	CVwduCi-	CVwduwa-
CV-ÿu-∅-	CVwu-	CVwuC-	—	CVwC-	CV:wa-

Table 8.10: Coalescence of perfective $\ddot{y}u-$, subject, and classifier; also edge CV prefixes e.g. $ka_{+9}-$ or $\ddot{y}a_{+10}-$.

Prefixes	Classifier shape		
	\emptyset -	C-	Ca-
ga- \check{u} - \bar{g} a- \check{x} a-	{ ku \check{k} a-	ku \check{k} aC-	ku \check{k} aCa-
	(k) \check{k} wa-	(k) \check{k} waC-	(k) \check{k} waCa-
ga- \check{u} - \bar{g} a-tu-	ga \check{x} too-	ga \check{x} tooC-	ga \check{x} tuCa-
ga- \check{u} - \bar{g} a-i-	{ ga \bar{g} ee-	ga \bar{g} eeC-	ga \bar{g} iCa-
	(k) \bar{g} ee-	(k) \bar{g} eeC-	(k) \bar{g} iCa-
ga- \check{u} - \bar{g} a- \check{y} i-	ga \check{x} \check{y} i-	ga \check{x} \check{y} iC-	ga \check{x} \check{y} iCa-
ga- \check{u} - \bar{g} a-du-	ga \check{x} du-	ga \check{x} duC-	—
ga- \check{u} - \bar{g} a- \emptyset -	{ gu \bar{g} a-	gu \bar{g} a-	} gu \check{x} Ca-
	k \bar{g} wa-	k \bar{g} wa-	
CV-ga- \check{u} - \bar{g} a- \check{x} a-	CVkw \check{k} a-	CVkw \check{k} aC-	CVkw \check{k} aCa-
CV-ga- \check{u} - \bar{g} a-tu-	CVga \check{x} too-	CVga \check{x} tooC-	CVga \check{x} tuCa-
CV-ga- \check{u} - \bar{g} a-i-	CVk \bar{g} ee-	CVk \bar{g} eeC-	CVk \bar{g} iCa-
CV-ga- \check{u} - \bar{g} a- \check{y} i-	CVga \check{x} \check{y} ee-	CVga \check{x} \check{y} eeC-	CVga \check{x} \check{y} iCa-
CV-ga- \check{u} - \bar{g} a-du-	CVga \check{x} du-	CVga \check{x} duC-	—
CV-ga- \check{u} - \bar{g} a- \emptyset -	CVkw \bar{g} a-	CVkw \bar{g} aC-	CVgu \check{x} Ca-

Table 8.11: Coalescence of future *ga- \check{u} - \bar{g} a-*, subject, and classifier; also edge CV prefixes e.g. *ka₊₉-* or *ya₊₁₀-*. Since future requires CL[-1], only the classifiers \emptyset -, C-, and Ca- occur.

Prefixes	Classifier shape				
	\emptyset -	C-	Ca-	Ci-	ya-
\emptyset -xa-	x̄a-	x̄aC-	x̄aCa-	x̄aCi-	x̄aa-
\emptyset -tu-	too-	tooC-	tuCa-	tuCi-	tuwa-
\emptyset -i-	ee-	eeC-	iCa-	iCi-	iya-
\emptyset -yi-	yi-	yiC-	yiCa-	yeeyCi-	yeey-
\emptyset -du-	du-	duC-	—	duCi-	duwa-
\emptyset - \emptyset -	\emptyset -	iC-	Ca-	Ci-	ya-
u- \emptyset -xa-	{ x̄wa- ux̄a-	x̄waC- ux̄aC-	x̄waCa- ux̄Ca-	x̄waCi- ux̄Ci-	x̄waa- ux̄aa-
u- \emptyset - \emptyset -	u-	uC-	—	uCi-	uwa-
u- \emptyset -du-	{ udu- du-	uduC- duC-	— —	— —	— —
CV- \emptyset -xa-	CVx̄a-	CVx̄aC-	CVx̄Ca-	CVx̄Ci-	CVx̄aa-
CV- \emptyset -tu-	CVtoo-	CVtooC-	CVtuCa-	CVtuCi-	CVtuwa-
CV- \emptyset -i-	Cee-	CeeC-	CeeCa-	CeeCi-	Ceeya-
CV- \emptyset -yi-	CVȳ-	CVȳiC-	CVȳCa-	CVȳeeyCi-	CVȳeey-
CV- \emptyset -du-	CVdu-	CVduC-	—	CVduCi-	CVduwa-
CV- \emptyset - \emptyset -	CV-	CVC-	CVCa-	CVCi-	CVya-*
CV-u- \emptyset -xa-	CV ^w :x̄a-	CV ^w :x̄aC-	CV ^w :x̄Ca-	CV ^w :x̄Ci-	CV ^w :x̄aa-
CV-u- \emptyset - \emptyset -	CV ^w :-	CV ^w :C-	—	CV ^w :Ci-	CV ^w :ya-
CV-u- \emptyset -du-	{ CV ^w :du- CVdu-	CV ^w :duC- CVduC-	— —	— —	— —
CV-u:- \emptyset -xa-	Cux̄a-	Cux̄aC-	Cux̄Ca-	CVux̄Ci-	Cux̄aa-
CV-u:- \emptyset - \emptyset -	Coo-	CooC-	CuCa-	CuCi-	Cuwa-
CV- \ddot{u} - \emptyset - \emptyset -	Cu-	CuC-	CuCa-	CuCi-	Coo-

Table 8.12: Coalescence of \emptyset -conjugation/aspect, subject, and classifier; also edge CV prefixes e.g. ka_{+9} - or $y\ddot{a}_{+10}$ -. * Note that ka_{+9} - $y\ddot{a}_{+1}$ - \rightarrow kaa -.

8.4.3. Subject: (+2)

8.4.3.1. First person singular *x̄a-*

8.4.3.1.1. Comparison with Athabaskan

8.4.3.2. First person plural *tu-*

8.4.3.3. Second person singular *ee-*

8.4.3.4. Second person plural *yi-*

8.4.3.5. Third person $\emptyset-$

8.4.3.6. Third person obviate *du-*

8.4.3.7. Indefinite human *du-*

8.4.4. Distributive *daḡa-* ~ *dax-* (+3)

8.4.4.1. Scope over entities

8.4.4.2. Subjecthood and objecthood

8.4.4.3. Scope over events

8.4.4.4. Relationship with +16 distributive

- 8.4.5. Perfective *ȳu-* (+4)
 - 8.4.5.1. Comparison with Athabaskan *s*-perfective
- 8.4.6. Inner aspect/conjugation (+5)
 - 8.4.6.1. *Ḡa*-conjugation/aspect
 - 8.4.6.1.1. Comparison with Athabaskan *γ*-perfective
 - 8.4.6.2. *Na*-conjugation/aspect
 - 8.4.6.2.1. Comparison with Athabaskan *n*-qualifier
 - 8.4.6.3. \emptyset -conjugation/aspect
- 8.4.7. Irrealis *u-* (+6)
[[Leer (L91) has three types of irrealis: *u-*, *u:-*, and *ũ-*. Why?]]
 - 8.4.7.1. Comparison with Athabaskan *w*-negative
- 8.4.8. Outer aspect/conjugation (+7)
 - 8.4.8.1. Modal *ḡa-*
 - 8.4.8.2. *Ga*-conjugaton/aspect
- 8.4.9. Self-benefactive *ga-* (+8)
- 8.4.10. Horizontal surface *ka-* (+9)
 - 8.4.10.1. Classificatory use
- 8.4.11. Vertical surface *ȳa-* (+10)
 - 8.4.11.1. Classificatory use

8.4.12. Inalienable incorporates (+11)

8.4.12.1. Relational nouns

8.4.12.1.1. End *shu-*8.4.12.1.2. Base *gu-*8.4.12.1.3. Bottom *ta-*8.4.12.1.4. Around *daa-*8.4.12.1.5. Midst *xoo-*8.4.12.1.6. Vicinity *xan-*8.4.12.1.7. Between *x'aa-*8.4.12.1.8. Behind *t'ei-*8.4.12.1.9. Backside *t'aa-*8.4.12.1.10. Inside *yik-*8.4.12.1.11. Beneath *yee-*8.4.12.1.12. Unknown *ki-*

8.4.12.2. Body parts

8.4.12.2.1. Hand *ji-*

8.4.12.2.1.1. Classificatory use

8.4.12.2.2. Mouth *x'a- ~ k'a-*8.4.12.2.3. Inside *tu-*8.4.12.2.4. Head *sha-*

8.4.12.2.4.1. Classificatory use

	<i>Prefix</i>	<i>Derivation</i>
<i>relational nouns</i>	daa-	<i>a daa</i> “its surrounding, periphery”
	gu-	<i>a gú</i> “its base, butt”
	ki-	? “?”
	shu-	<i>a shú</i> “its end”
	ta-	<i>a tá</i> “its bottom”
	t’aa-	<i>a t’áa ~ a t’áak</i> “its landward side”
	t’éi-	<i>a t’éi</i> “behind it, area screened by it”
	xoo-	<i>a xoo</i> “amidst them, within it”
	xan-	<i>a xán</i> “its vicinity, near it”
	x’aa-	<i>a x’aa</i> “spaces between it”
	yee-	<i>a yee</i> “its underneath, beneath it”
	yik-	<i>a yík</i> “inside it (shallow concave thing)”
<i>body parts</i>	daaʔit-	<i>du daaʔéet</i> “his joint” (e.g. elbow, wrist)
	duk(ka-)	<i>dook</i> “skin” (usu. not inalienable: <i>a doogú</i> “its skin”)
	gin-	<i>a geen</i> “its tail flipper”
	ji-	<i>du jín</i> “his hand, arm”
	keey-	<i>du keey</i> “his knee”
	laka-	<i>laká</i> “alimentary cavity”
	lidíx’-	<i>du lidíx’</i> “his neck, throat”
	lu-	<i>du lú</i> “his nose, its point”
	se- ~ sa-	? “voice”
	sha-	<i>du shá</i> “his head, its top”
	s’aan-	? “limb”
	s’aḵ(ka-)	<i>s’aak</i> “bone” (usu. not inalienable: <i>a s’aaḡí</i> “its bone”)
	s’ee(ka-)	<i>du s’ee</i> “his eyebrow”
	tax’-	<i>du téix</i> “his heart”
	tóox’-	<i>du tóox’ ká</i> “kneeling, on his knees”
	tu-	<i>a tú</i> “its inside, his mind”
	tux’é-	<i>du tux’é</i> “his anus” (from <i>du tuk</i> “his butt” + <i>a x’é</i> “opening”)
	tl’iḵ(sha-)	<i>du tl’eiḵ</i> “his finger”
	wak(ka-)	<i>du waak</i> “his eye”
	xá-	<i>a xaaw</i> “its fur”
	xí-	? “shoulder”
	x’a- ~ k’a-	<i>du x’é</i> “his mouth, its opening”
x’atu-	<i>du x’é</i> “his mouth” + <i>a tú</i> “its inside”	
x’us(ka-)	<i>du x’oos</i> “his foot, leg”	

Table 8.13: Inalienable incorporated nouns (+11).

- 8.4.12.2.5. Nose *lu-*
- 8.4.12.2.6. Voice *se- ~ sa-*
- 8.4.12.2.7. Fur/hair *x̣a-*
- 8.4.12.2.8. Tail *gin-*
- 8.4.12.2.9. Shoulder *x̣i-*
- 8.4.12.2.10. Limb *s'aan-*
- 8.4.12.2.11. Neck *lidíx'-*
- 8.4.12.2.12. Eye *wak(ka)-*
- 8.4.12.2.13. Bone *s'ak(ka)-*
- 8.4.12.2.14. Foot *x'us(ka)-*
- 8.4.12.2.15. Eyebrow *s'ee(ka)-*
- 8.4.12.2.16. Skin *duk(ka)-*
- 8.4.12.2.17. Finger *tl'ik(sha)-*
- 8.4.12.2.18. Knee *keey-*
- 8.4.12.2.19. Kneeling *tóox'-*
- 8.4.12.2.20. Inside of mouth *x'atu-*
- 8.4.12.2.21. Alimentary cavity *laka-*
- 8.4.12.2.22. Anus *tukx'e-*
- 8.4.12.2.23. Joint *daa.it-*
- 8.4.12.2.24. Heart *tax'-*

8.4.13. Alienable incorporates (+12)

<i>Prefix</i>	<i>Derivation</i>
$\bar{g}ax-$	$\bar{g}aax$ “crying, weeping”
shakux-	<i>shakoox</i> “thirst”
$x'asakw-$	$x'aséikw$ “breath, life”
yaan-	<i>yaan</i> “hunger”
yata-	<i>tá</i> “sleep”
taa-	? “missing”
kanik-	<i>kaneek</i> “report, news”
kayik-	<i>kayéik</i> “noise”
ya \check{a} -	<i>ya\check{a}</i> “reproach, curse”
$\check{k}ee\sim\check{k}ei-$	* $\check{k}ei$ “dawn”
xee \sim x $\check{e}i-$	* $\check{x}ei$ “dusk, shadow”
yee \sim y $\check{e}i-$	* $\check{y}ee$ “time”, cf. <i>yedá(a)t</i> “moment”
aan-	<i>aan</i> “land”
hin-	<i>héen</i> “fresh water, river”
naa-	<i>naa</i> “clan, nation, people”
saa-	<i>saa</i> “name”
sha $\check{a}xw-$	<i>sha.aaxw</i> “bundle”
yakw-	<i>yaakw</i> “canoe”

Table 8.14: Alienable incorporated nouns (+12).

8.4.13.1. Cry $\bar{g}ax-$

The incorporated alienable noun $\bar{g}ax-$ is derived from the independent noun $\bar{g}aax$ “cry, crying”, which is the same root as in the verb *S-CL[-D, \emptyset]- $\bar{g}aax$* “S cry, weep”. The incorporated alienable noun $\bar{g}ax-$ may be an instance of an activity incorporate as discussed by Rice (2008).

- (30) a. $\bar{g}a\bar{x}$ -*S-CL*[-D, s]-*tee* “S cry”
 kei $\bar{g}a\bar{x}$ $\bar{g}a\bar{x}$ yisatée
 kei= $\bar{g}a\bar{x}$ -ga-u- $\bar{g}a$ -yi-sa-tée
 up=cry-GCNJ-IRR-GCNJ-2PL.S-CL[-D, s, -I]-be
 “you (pl.) will cry” (NS73:60)

The reasons for selecting either the verb theme *S-CL*[-D, \emptyset]- $\bar{g}aa\bar{x}$ “S cry” or the theme $\bar{g}a\bar{x}$ -*S-CL*[-D, s]-*tee* “S cry” with the incorporated $\bar{g}a\bar{x}$ - are unclear. It is possible that the latter may imply a sort of adversative because of causativity of the s series component in the classifier, but this is difficult to determine. Another possibility is that the theme with root $\bar{g}aa\bar{x}$ is more focused on the action of crying whereas the theme with incorporated $\bar{g}a\bar{x}$ is more focused on the state of crying, but again this is difficult to determine.

- 8.4.13.2. Thirst *shakux*-
 8.4.13.3. Breath *x’asakw*-
 8.4.13.4. Hunger *yaan*-
 8.4.13.5. Sleep *yata*-
 8.4.13.6. Missing *taa*-

The incorporated noun *taa*- only appears in one verb theme and does not have any obvious corresponding independent noun. It is arbitrarily grouped with the alienable incorporates, and the lack of themes including this with other inalienable incorporates makes it impossible to determine which slot it falls into. I have glossed it as “missing” out of convenience, but it may actually have some other meaning of which I am unaware.

The theme which this incorporated noun appears is *P yá-x O-taa-CL*[-D, \emptyset]-*?aas* “O be lonesome for (the visage of) P” (NS73:269). Curiously, this is the only theme that occurs with the root *?aas*. The following two examples are given by Story & Naish:127.

- (31) *P yá-x O-taa-cl[-D, Ø]-ʔaas* “O be lonesome for (the visage of) P”
- a. a_x aat yá_x xat taawa.ás
 a_x aat yá-x xat-taa-ŷu-ŷa-ʔás
 1SG.PSS mat.aunt face-PERT 1SG.O-missing-PFV-CL[-D, Ø, +I]-lonesome
 “I’m lonesome for my maternal aunt” (NS73:127)
- b. wóosh yá_x yee taaguxda.ás
 wóosh yá-x yi-taa-ga-u-g̃a-da-ʔás
 RECIP face-PERT 2PL.O-missing-GCNJ-IRR-GCNJ-CL[+D, Ø, -I]-lonesome
 “you will be lonesome for each other” (NS73:127)

Pending further research, there is little further that can be said about this incorporated noun.

- 8.4.13.7. News *kaneek-*
- 8.4.13.8. Noise *kayik-*
- 8.4.13.9. Reproach *yaká-*
- 8.4.13.10. Dusk *xee- ~ xei-*
- 8.4.13.11. Dawn *kee- ~ kei-*
- 8.4.13.12. Time *yee- ~ yei-*
- 8.4.13.13. Land *aan-*
- 8.4.13.14. Water *hín-*
- 8.4.13.15. People *naa-*
- 8.4.13.16. Name *saa-*
- 8.4.13.17. Canoe *yaakw-*
- 8.4.13.18. Bundle *sha.aaxw-*

8.4.14. Areal *ku-* (+13)

8.4.14.1. Types of areals

8.4.14.2. Status as incorporated noun

8.4.14.3. Status as object

8.4.14.4. Comparisons with Athabaskan and Eyak

In both Tlingit and the Athabaskan languages the verb “to say” is uniquely irregular with an indefinite human subject. Rather than marking the subject with the usual indefinite human subject morpheme, instead the areal prefix represents the subject.

(32) a. *Tlingit*

yé: quya:waqa:

yé:=qu-ÿa-ÿu-ÿa-qa:

thus=AREAL-VSFC-PFV-CL[-D, Ø, +I]-say

“people said so”

b. *Koyukon*

hədəye:ne:ʔ

hə-də-ye-θ-ne:ʔ

AREAL-QUAL-PFV-CL[-D, Ø]-say

“people said” (Jetté & Jones 2000:437)

The verb root in each is different, and the Koyukon *də*-qualifier and the Tlingit *ÿa*- thematic prefix are unrelated, but the areal prefixes *qu-* and *hə-* (< PA **qʷə-*, see Thompson 1993) are cognate, as are the classifiers. The form of the perfective morpheme in both is quite similar, however this is probably coincidental. The Athabaskan **γ*-perfective derives from PND **ca-* which has a Tlingit reflex *ca-* that functions as a conjugation class and aspect marker. The reflex in Eyak is *ca-*, it appears in Koyukon as *γə-* (Jetté & Jones 2000:238), and in Tsuut’ina (Sarcee) and Navajo as *yi-* (Rice 2009). In contrast the Tlingit perfective *ÿu-* derives from PND **xʷi-* (Leer p.c. in Vajda 2009:11) that developed into Eyak *s-* and the Athabaskan **s*-perfective appearing for example in Slave as *w-*, in Navajo as *si-* (both Rice & Hargus 1989), and in Galice as *s-* (Hoijer 1966).

- 8.4.15. Object (+14)
 - 8.4.15.1. Objects and incorporated nouns
 - 8.4.15.1.1. Possessor and inalienables
 - 8.4.15.1.2. Possibility of third person \emptyset - possessor
 - 8.4.15.2. First person singular *xát-*
 - 8.4.15.3. First person plural *haa-*
 - 8.4.15.4. Second person singular *i-*
 - 8.4.15.5. Second person plural *yee-*
 - 8.4.15.6. Third person \emptyset - ~ *a-*
 - 8.4.15.6.1. Third person object alternation
 - 8.4.15.6.2. Comparison with Athabaskan alternation
 - 8.4.15.6.3. Interaction with ergative *-ch*
 - 8.4.15.7. Third person proximate *ash-*
 - 8.4.15.8. Indefinite human *k_aaa-* ~ *k_u-*
 - 8.4.15.8.1. Distinguishing areal and indefinite human
 - 8.4.15.9. Indefinite nonhuman *at-*
 - 8.4.15.10. Partitive *aa-*
 - 8.4.15.11. Reflexive *sh-*
 - 8.4.15.11.1. Cooccurrences of *sh-* with other objects

8.4.15.12. Plural number *has-* ~ *s-* (+15)

The prefix *has-* ~ *s-* is a marker of plurality in the verb. It is related to the independent third person plural pronoun *hás* (see §4.10.1.2.6) as well as the prefix *has-* which occurs in the third person plural possessive *has-du* (§4.10.1.1.6) and the third person plural postpositional *has-du=ee* (§4.10.1.3.6). The use of *s-* rather than *has-* appears to be purely idiosyncratic, although it seems impressionistically to be somewhat more common among non-Northern dialects.

The plural prefix might be assumed to be a marker of plurality only in objects because of its position. This is not the case however, since it also appears to mark plurality of subjects in some verbs. The following example shows its use in pluralizing a subject.

- (33) yóo k'isáani tleiḱaa has uwaxée
 yóo k'i-sáani tleiḱaa has-ÿu-∅-ÿa-xée
 DEM.DIST young.man-COLL twenty PL-PFV-3S-CL[-D, ∅, +I]-overnight
 “those young men camped twenty nights” (Swanton 1909:354)

In this next example the plural is also used for a subject. Here it is somewhat redundant since the verb root inherently specifies plurality, nonetheless the plural prefix still appears.

- (34) *S-CL[-D, ∅]-ʔaat* “S go (pl.)”
 yoo s ya.átk
 yoo=s-∅-ÿa-ʔát-k
 ALT=PL-3S-CL[-D, ∅, -I]-GO.PL-REP
 “they go to and fro” (S66:104)

8.4.16. Reciprocal and distributive (+16)

8.4.16.1. Reciprocal *woosh-*8.4.16.2. Distributive *dax-*

8.4.17. Preverbs (+17)

- (35) a. yan uwakúx
 ÿan=u-Ø-ÿa-kúx
 ABMAR-PFV-3S-CL[-D, Ø, +I]-go.SG.boat
 “he went ashore” (L91:140)
- b. yan áwé uwakúx
 ÿan=[ʔáwé]=u-Ø-ÿa-kúx
 ABMAR-FOC.MDST-PFV-3S-CL[-D, Ø, +I]-go.SG.boat
 “it’s that he went ashore”
- c. yax yakḡeegoodán
 ÿax=ÿa-kḡee-Ø-goot-án
 TERM-VSFC-FUT.2SG.S-CL[-D, Ø, -I]-go.SG-REST
 “you will come around¹ (reform) in the end” (L91:140)
- d. yax ásé yakḡeegoodán
 ÿax=[ʔásé]=ya-kḡee-Ø-goot-án
 TERM-[DED]-VSFC-FUT.2SG.S-CL[-D, Ø, -I]-go.SG-REST
 “it seems that you will come around in the end”

- (36) a. aan neil aawagút
 a-n neil=a-ÿu-ÿa-gút
 3N-INSTR ADDOM-3O-PFV-3S-CL[-D, Ø, +I]-go.SG
 “he came inside with it” (L91:141)
- b. neil aan aawagút
 neil=[a-n]=a-ÿu-ÿa-gút
 ADDOM-[3N-INSTR]-3O-PFV-3S-CL[-D, Ø, +I]-go.SG

1. The meaning here is metaphoric, with the person coming around to the proper way of thinking or acting. The English “come around”, with its concept of movement, is a good match.

<i>Grp.</i>	<i>Prefix</i>	<i>Gloss</i>	<i>Description</i>
A	yoo=	ALT	back and forth, to and fro
	ÿaa=	along	along, down, obliquely
B	ÿaa=	MENT	mental state or activity
C	yéi= ~ ye' _T =	thus	thus, so
D	kei=	up	up
	yey=	down	down, out of vehicle
	ÿeek= ~ ÿeik= ~ i'k _T =	ADLIT	shoreward, down to shore
	daak=	ABLIT	inland, back from open, off of fire
	daak=	ADMAR	seaward, into open, onto fire, fall
E1	ÿan=, ÿax=, ÿándeí=	ABMAR	ashore, onto ground, rest
	neil=, neil _x =, néildeí=	ADDOM	inside, homeward, into building
	haa=, haat=, haax=, háadeí=	HITHER	hither, toward speaker
	yóo= yóot=, yóox=, yóodeí=	HENCE	hence, away, off (indef. loc.)
	kux=, [?] kux _x =, kúx _x deí=	REV	aback, reversed direction
	kux=, kux _x =, kúx _x deí=	ADVAD	aground, into shallows
E2	kut=	ERR	astray, lost (-t)
	ÿax= ~ ÿan= ~ ÿandey=	TERM	stop, end (-x)
	yux=	ELL	outside (-x)
	yaa _x =	INVEH	into vehicle (-x)
	héen _x =	INAQ	into water (-x)
	ux=(kei=)	INVIS	out of control, blindly (-x)
	k _w áak _x =(daak _k =)	WRONG	by mistake, wrongly (-x)
	yed _x = ~ yeda _x _T =	ABINIT	starting off, taking off (-dáx)
ÿaanax= ~ ÿa'nax _T =	INFRA	underground (-náx)	
F	ḡunaÿéi= ~ ḡunéi=	INCEP	beginning
	aa=	LOC	there
	áa=(ÿax=)	ROT	turning over
	shóo=(ÿax=)	ADROT	turning over endwise
	héeni=	AQLOC	into water
	gági=	ABUMB	from hiding into open
	éégi=	ABSILV	from woods onto beach
dáagi=	ABAQ	out of water onto shore	

Table 8.15: Adverbial proclitics (adapted from L91:132ff).

[[There's something either wrong or peculiar and hitherto undescribed with the glosses above. Leer (L91:141) says:

ne·t#?a--n#?a·wagúd

(inside#it-with#INDEF.singular.came)

'someone brought it inside', lit. 'someone came inside with it'

Note that he's given "INDEF" for what appears to be +14 *a-*, which is normally 30. Being an object argument for an ordinarily unergative verb that usually has a lone subject argument is weird. Also, why indefinite?]]

- (37) a. du een neil aawa.aat
 du=ee-n neil=aa=ÿu-θ-ÿa-?aat
 3H.PSS=BASE-INSTR ADDOM=LOC=PFV-3S-CL[-D, θ, +I]-go. PL
 "someone came inside with him" (L91:141)
- b. *neil du een aawa.aat
 neil=[du=ee-n]=aa=ÿu-θ-ÿa-?aat
 ADDOM=[3H.PSS=BASE-INSTR]=LOC=PFV-3S-CL[-D, θ, +I]-go. PL
- (38) a. hasdu daa kei yaa kushuguxsagéi
 has-du daa kei=ÿaa=ku-shu-gux-sa-géi
 PL-3H.PSS around up=MENT=INDH.O-tip-FUT-CL[-D, s, -I]-understand
 "they will understand" (L91:141)
- b. kei s du daa yaa kushuguxsagéi
 kei=[s-du-daa]=ÿaa=ku-shu-gux-sa-géi
 up=[PL-3H.PSS-around]=MENT=INDH.O-tip-FUT-CL[-D, s, -I]-understand
 "they will understand"

8.4.17.1. Group A

8.4.17.1.1. Alternative *yoo*= “to and fro”8.4.17.1.2. Translative *yaa*= “along”

- (39) taan yaa yandutsák
 taan yaa=yā-na-du-θ-tsák
 sea.lion along-VSFC-NCNJ-3OBV.S-CL[-D, θ, -I]-pursue
 “they are following along after a sea lion (to tire it out)” (NS73:162)”

8.4.17.2. Group B

8.4.17.2.1. Mental *yaa*= “thought”

The mental preverb *yaa*= refers essentially to mental states and mental activities. It probably originated from an independent noun which is now lost, since the form of the preverb is comparable to PA **yən-* ~ *yi·n-* “mind” and Eyak *?i·lih* which is a preverb and incorporated noun referring to states of mind (L91:135).

- (40) a. *P daa yaa=kū-S-CL[-D, s]-gāat* “S confuse P”
 kūgwás’ aḫ daa yaa kūowsigát
 kūgwás’ aḫ daa yaa=kū-ŷu-θ-si-gát
 fog 1SG.PSS around MENT=AREAL-PFV-3S-CL[-D, s, +I]-fall
 “the fog confused me” (NS73:54)
- b. *P daa yaa=kū-shu-S?-CL[+D, s]-géi* “P understand S”
 tléil hasdu daa yaa kūshuwusgé
 tléil has-du daa yaa=kū-shu-ŷu-θ?-s-gé
 NEG PL-3H.PSS around MENT=AREAL-tip-PFV-3S-CL[+D, s, -I]-understand
 “they didn’t understand” (NS73:54)

This preverb does not necessarily occur in every theme which has to do with mental activity. The following are a few illustrations of verbs whose meaning might cause one to expect the use of the mental preverb, but in which themes the preverb does not in fact appear.

- (41) a. *P daa O-tu-CL[-D, Ø]-tee₁* “S think about P”
 waa sá a daax’ ituwatee?
 waa sá a daa-x’ i-tu-Ø-ÿa-tee
 how Q 3N.PSS around-LOC 2SG.O-inside-ZCNJ-CL[-D, Ø, +I]-be
 “what do you think about it?” (NS73:226)
- b. *P S-CL[-D, Ø]-jee* “S think P is the case”
 yéi x̣waaǰée
 yéi=ÿu-x̣a-ÿa-jée
 thus=PFV-1SG.S-CL[-D, Ø, +I]-think
 “I think so; I imagine so” (NS73:226)

The first verb has the inalienable incorporated noun *tu-* “inside, mind” which is common to a number of verbs about thought and feeling. The second verb has only the root *jee* which is a basic verb root meaning “think”.

8.4.17.3. Group C

8.4.17.3.1. Manner *yéi=* ~ *yeyi=* “thus”

The preverb *yéi=* ~ *yeyi=* is probably one of the most common preverbs in Tlingit speech. In most contexts its meaning is similar to English “thus” or “so”, describing the manner in which an action or event occurs, or emphasizing the quality of a state. It also sees some minor use in redundantly indicating the future tense for some verbs, as well as a few other functions. It is obviously related to the phrasal particle *yé* which is used for much the same purpose. Interestingly, the connection between the particle and the preverb is still rather strong, since the particle occasionally appears to the right of the verb when the preverb fails to appear, pointing to the likelihood of the preverb being dislocated.

Leer (2008:33) argues that the preverb *yéi=* ~ *yeyi=*, in Tongass Tlingit *ye’=*, derives from a PND (“PAET”) form **’yaχ*, along with the independent particle *yéi* in modern Tlingit which has essentially the same meaning. The historical progression involves the sonorantization of a final fricative PND **χ* which becomes the voiced velar fricative **γ* in (Pre-)Pre-Tlingit, and then the voiced velar approximant **ÿ*. This then causes the vocalic shift of **a > e* before **ÿ* which is then converted to *’*; a proposal he claims is the essential source of *e* in Tlingit – PND lacking this vowel. The final *’* in Tongass Tlingit and the high tone in other dialects he explains as being due to a glottal metathesis of the *’* on *ÿ* with *’* and then high tone developing from the new final *’*. The progression is thus:

(42) PND *'yaχ > PPT *'yaγ > *'yaÿ > PT *'ye' > OTI ye' > TT ye', ST yéi, NT yéi

- (43) a. aadéi yéi yoo asineek
 á-déi yéi=yoo=a-∅-si-nee-k
 there-ALL thus=ALT=3.O-3.S-CL[-D, s, +I]-carry-REP
 “she carries them there repeatedly” (L91:135)
- b. aadéi kei yéi anasneen
 á-déi kei=yéi=a-na-∅-si-nee-n
 there-ALL up=thus=3O-NCNJ-3S-CL[-D, s, -I]-carry-VAR
 “she is carrying them up there” (L91:135)
- c. aadéi yéi yaa anasneen
 á-déi yéi=ÿaa=a-na-∅-si-nee-n
 there-ALL thus=along=3O-NCNJ-3S-CL[-D, s, -I]-carry-VAR
 “she is carrying them along toward there” (L91:135)
- d. aadéi yaa yéi anasneen
 á-déi ÿaa=yéi=a-na-∅-si-nee-n
 there-ALL along=thus=3O-NCNJ-3S-CL[-D, s, -I]-carry-VAR
 “she is carrying them along toward there” (L91:135)

8.4.17.4. Group D

8.4.17.4.1. Ascendant *kei*= “up”

- (44) shaa yadaax kei nagút
 shaa ÿá-daa-x kei-na-∅-∅-gút
 mountain face-around-PERT up=NCNJ-3S-CL[-D, ∅, -I]-go.SG
 “he is going up the mountain” (NS73:21)

8.4.17.4.2. Descendant *yéi*= “down”

- (45) shaa kaadáx yei nagút
 shaa ká-dáx yei-na-θ-θ-gút
 mountain HSFC-ABL down=NCNJ-3S-CL[-D, θ, -I]-go.SG
 “he is going down the mountain” (NS73:67)

8.4.17.4.3. Adlitoral (y)eeḱ= ~ yeiḱ= “beachward”

The adlitoral² preverb *yeeḱ* ~ *yeeiḱ* ~ *ʔiḱ_T* indicates movement towards the shore from land. The Tongass dialect form *iḱ_T* shows that this preverb derives from the noun *eik* ~ *eeḱ* ~ *iḱ_T* “beach, shore”. The initial approximant *y* is thus an innovation which was perhaps modeled on the several other proclitics which begin with *y*.

8.4.17.4.4. Ablitoral *daak*= “inland”

Ablitoral³ *daak*- indicates movement inland from the shore.

8.4.17.4.5. Admarine *daak*= “seaward”

Admarine⁴ *daak*- indicates movement out to sea from land.

An unusual use of this preverb appears in the theme *daak*=*O-CL*[-D, s]-*taan* “O falls” in reference to atmospheric precipitation.

- (46) a. séew daak wusitán
 séew daak=ʔu-θ-si-tán
 rain ADMAR=PFV-3S-CL[-D, s, +I]-carry
 “rain fell” [cite]
- b. dléit daak wusitán
 dléit daak=ʔu-θ-si-tán
 snow ADMAR=PFV-3S-CL[-D, s, +I]-carry
 “snow fell” [cite]

2. From Latin *ad* “toward” and *litus* “shore, beach”.

3. From Latin *ab* “away from” and *litus* “shore, beach”.

4. From Latin *ad* “toward” and *mare* “sea”.

8.4.17.5. Group E1

<i>Gloss</i>	<i>Base</i>	<i>Punctual</i> -t	<i>Pertingent</i> -x̄	<i>Allative</i> -d̄ei
ABMAR	ÿan=	—	ÿax̄=	ÿánd̄ei=
ADDOM	neil=	—	neilx̄=	néil̄d̄ei=
hither	haa=	haat=	haax̄=	háad̄ei=
hence	yóo=	yóot=	yóox̄=	yóod̄ei=
REV	kux̄=	—	[?] kux̄x̄=	kúx̄d̄ei=
ADVAD	kux=	—	kuxx̄=	kúxd̄ei=

Table 8.16: Variant forms of the group E1 preverbs

The group E1 preverbs are characterized by having variant forms. Leer (L91:137) described these as being suffixed in their basic form with punctual case which is always zero ($-\emptyset$), thus claiming that the hither proclitic *haat=* and the hence proclitic *yóot=* were actually underlyingly *haat- \emptyset =* and *yóot- \emptyset =*, an argument which seems to needlessly multiply entities. Also, his analysis neglects the appearance of *haa-* in the imperative *haagú* “come here”, so often heard from speakers in casual conversation. Furthermore, Leer’s claim that the whole group is derived from nominal stems followed by case suffixes is somewhat obscure, since the noun *haat* “current” is clearly unrelated, *haa* is a possessive pronoun, and *yóo* is a demonstrative.

Instead, I analyze the E1 preverbs as each having a basic form along with three variant forms, of which only the allative is definitely a complete paradigm. The base form is always unmarked. The *haa=* and *yóo=* preverbs have a punctual suffixed form which is more common than the base form, although examples of the base forms do exist. The pertingent forms exist for all of the E1 preverbs, but the form *kuxx̄=* may be indistinguishable from the base form due to its phonological structure, and hence the two forms can be considered allomorphs if not actually identical. The allative forms can be found for all the E1 preverbs, and are more saliently distinct to speakers since they are composed of two syllables.

The “hither” preverb *haa-* and the “hence” preverb *yóo-* are probably derived from the second person plural object pronominal and the distal demonstrative, respectively. The abmarine *ÿan-*, homeward *neil-*, revertive *kux̄-*, and advative *kux-* are all associated with directionals outside of the verb.

The association of the E1 preverbs with the E2 preverbs rather than with the D preverbs is a structural one following Leer (L91:138). None of the E1 preverbs can occur with either the D or E2 preverbs, so there is no surface ordering associated with them. Nevertheless, the E1 preverbs have been associated with E2 since they have what appear to be case suffixes and the D preverbs do not. This ordering is purely a descriptive convenience, and does not indicate a functional division in the language.

8.4.17.5.1. Abmarine *yán=* ~ *yáx=* ~ *yándeí=* “landward”

The abmarine⁵ preverb *yán=* ~ *yáx=* ~ *yándeí=* indicates movement away from sea and towards land. The alienable noun *yán* means “shore, land” (LHR01:T-97),⁶ and it is from this noun that the abmarine prefix is most likely derived. Leer (L91:137) argues that *yán* originally meant “ground, earth” and descends from a Proto-Na-Dene source that also gave rise to the Proto-Athabaskan cognate **ɲən* “earth”.

[[According to Leer there is a distinct difference between the abmarine and the terminative. The forms he gives for the abmarine are *yán#* and *yáx#*, whereas the only form he gives for the terminative is *yáx#*. This is incomplete since there are many examples of *yán=* for the terminative as well. Also, both the abmarine and the terminative can take directional case, e.g. *yándeí=* can be either “towards the shore” or “towards completion”. If there is no allomorphic difference between them, then why should they be considered separate? Particularly, why did he place them in different groups? Did he elicit some wacky motion verb with both abmarine and terminative proclitics or something?]]

8.4.17.5.2. Addomitive *neíl=* ~ *neílχ=* ~ *neíildeí=* “homeward”

The homeward proclitic is *neíl=*. It indicates that the motion described by the verb is either headed towards or will end at or inside the house, or instead at or inside a nearby building. Which particular house or building must be determined from context, although it is typically the home of the person being talked about. If the speaker is near a building then they typically will use a gesture to

5. From Latin *ab* “away from” and *mare* “sea”. This could also be “adterrive” with *terra* “land”, but the symmetry between admarine and abmarine parallels well with the pair of adlitoral and ablitoral.

6. There is a homophonous noun *yán* meaning “western hemlock” (*Tsuga mertensiana*) which is unrelated although a vague relationship could be argued based on the mostly hemlock forest that crowds the shoreline.

indicate that the nearby building is the referent of *neil=*, or may gesture away from it to indicate their reference to some other building.

- (47) a. *neil gú*
neil=∅-∅-ǵú(t)
 HOME=2SG.S-CL[-D, ∅, -I]-go.SG
 “come inside! (sg)” or “go home! (sg)” (DD02:9)
- b. *neil yi.á*
neil=yi-∅-ʔá(t)
 HOME=2PL.S-CL[-D, ∅, -I]-go.PL
 “come inside! (pl)” or “go home! (pl)”

Out of context it can be difficult to determine what the referent of *neil=* is. In this sentence, if the speaker was describing something that they experienced personally then the referent of *neil=* could be the building in which the speaker is located as they spoke, or the house which the speaker normally inhabits, or a building which the speaker was located in while the event they are describing took place, or a building which the speaker was near but outside of while the event took place. These are only a few of the possibilities. If the speaker was describing something that they did not experience, then the referent of *neil=* could be the house of the person they are discussing, the building in which the action they are describing took place, or any number of other possibilities.

Despite all this variation in meaning, given any sort of adequate context the meaning of *neil=* is usually quite clear. In addition, *neil=* is not often used in speech where the referent is not previously described, thus it is likely that the building or house will have already been mentioned.

The ambiguity between “house” and “building” is a result of cultural change over the last century or so. In traditional Tlingit life, there were only a few varieties of living spaces. The most common and certainly the normally assumed meaning of *neil=* was the *hít* “house”, or more properly *naa hídi* “clan house-*pss*”, the clan house made of adze-hewn planks found throughout the Northwest Coast.

8.4.17.5.3. Hither *haa*= ~ *haat*= ~ *haax̣*= ~ *háadei*= “to here”

- (48) a. *haagú!*
haa= \emptyset - \emptyset - \emptyset -*gú*(t)
 hither=ZCNJ-2SG.S-CL[-D, \emptyset , -I]-go.SG
 “come here! (sg)” (DD02:9)
- b. *haat yi.á!*
haat= \emptyset -yee- \emptyset -*ʔá*(t)
 hither=ZCNJ-2PL.S-CL[-D, \emptyset , -I]-go.PL
 “come here! (pl)” (DD02:9)

8.4.17.5.4. Hence *yóo*= ~ *yóot*= ~ *yóox̣*= ~ *yóodei*= “from here”8.4.17.5.5. Revertive *kux̣*= ~ *kúx̣dei*= “back”

The revertive preverb *kux̣*- indicates backward motion or a reversal of motion. It is related to the relational noun *kúx̣*, which however has high tone unlike this proclitic.

As explained in §8.4.1.1.2, the revertive adverbial proclitic *kux̣*- requires +D in the classifier.

- (49) a. *kux̣ aka χ wdidzée*
kux̣=a-ka-*ÿu*-*xa*-di-dzée
 REV=3O-HSFC-PFV-1SG.S-CL[+D, \emptyset , +I]-halt
 “(when I saw the bear) I stopped short” (NS73:74)

[[Why does this example have *a*- instead of \emptyset -?]]

8.4.17.5.6. Advadive *kux*= ~ *kux̣*= ~ *kúx̣dei*= “aground”

The advadive⁷ preverb *kux*- indicates movement into shallow waters or movement which may result in running aground.

8.4.17.6. Group E2

[[Explain why this group should be distinct from group E1.]]

7. From Latin *ad* “toward” and *vadum* “shallow, shoal, ford”.

8.4.17.6.1. Errative *ƙut*= “astray, lost”

The errative⁸ preverb *ƙut*- indicates straying or losing.

- (50) a. a_x dáanaa daakagwéili tóodax
 ?a_x dáanaa daakagwéili tú-dá_x
 1SG.PSS money around.bag inside-ABL
 ƙut ka_xwlisóos
 ƙut=∅-ka-ÿu-_xa-li-sóos
 ERR=3O-HSFC-PFV-1SG.S-CL[-D, l, +I]-fall
 “I lost them from my purse” (NS73:128)
- b. a_x x’eesháyi ƙut _xwaa_xeech
 a_x x’eeshá-ÿí ƙut=∅-ÿu-_xa-ÿa-_xeech
 1SG.PSS bucket-PSS ERR=3O-PFV-1SG.S-CL[-D, ∅, +I]-throw
 “I lost my bucket” (NS73:129)
- c. du yaagú ƙut aawaḡéex’
 du yaakw-ÿí ƙut=a-ÿu-∅-ÿa-ḡéex’
 3SG.PSS boat-PSS ERR=3O-PFV-3S-CL[-D, ∅, +I]-throw
 “he lost his boat (as a wreck)” (NS73:129)
- d. du ch’éeni ƙut awsiḡéex’
 du ch’éen-ÿí ƙut=a-ÿu-∅-si-ḡéex’
 3SG.PSS ribbon-PSS ERR=3O-PFV-3S-CL[-D, s, +I]-throw
 aan _x’ayeex’
 ?aan _x’éi-yee-x’
 town mouth-below-LOC
 “she lost her ribbon in the street” (NS73:129)

8. From Latin *erro* “to go astray, to lose oneself”. Cf. Eng. “errant” as in “knight errant”.

- e. *kut xat wudzigeet*
kut=xat-ÿu-dzi-geet
 ERR=1SG.O-PFV-CL[+D, s, +I]-fall
 “I was lost” (NS73:129)

8.4.17.6.2. Terminative *yaχ= ~ ÿan= ~ ÿandei=* “stop, end”

The terminative⁹ preverb is *yan= ~ yaχ= ~ ÿandei=*. It indicates the termination or end of an action or change of state. As with the inceptive, it is not normally used with verbs which describe momentaneous events.

- (51) a. *laak'ask yaχ akawsihaa*
laak'ask ÿaχ=a-ka-ÿu-θ-si-haa
 seaweed¹⁰ TERM=3O-HSFC-PFV-3S-CL[-D, s, +I]- spread.out
 “he spread out the seaweed” (NS73:206)
- b. *waa sá yan has kawdiyaayí*
waa sá ÿan=has-ka-ÿu-di-yaa-ÿí
 what Q TERM-PL-HSFC-PFV-CL[+D, θ, +I]-happen-ATTR
 “what had happened to them” (NS73:105)

9. Also known as “choative”, “cessative”, and “completive”. The first two are obscure, and “completive” implies completion which is not necessary, the activity may simply terminate without having completed.

10. The seaweed called *laak'ask* is probably a *Palmaria* species, in the *Rhodophyta* phylum. It is not *P. callophyloides* Hawkes & Scagel, but I have been unable to identify it further.

- 8.4.17.6.3. Ellative *yux̣*= “outside”
- 8.4.17.6.4. Invehicular *yaax̣*= “into vehicle”
- 8.4.17.6.5. Inaquative *héenx̣*= “into water”
- 8.4.17.6.6. Invisive *ux̣(-kei)*= “out of control, blindly”
- 8.4.17.6.7. Fallative *kwáakx̣(-daak)*= “wrongly, mistakenly”
- 8.4.17.6.8. Abinitial *yedx̣*= ~ *yedax̣*= “starting off, taking off”
- 8.4.17.6.9. Infraessive *yaanax̣*= “underground”

8.4.17.7. Group F

8.4.17.7.1. Inceptive *ḡunayéi*= ~ *ḡunéi*= “beginning”

The inceptive¹¹ preverb is *ḡunayéi*= ~ *ḡunéi*=. This indicates the inception or beginning of an action or change of state. It is not normally used with verbs describing momentaneous events.

- (52) a. tléil ḡunayéi eelats'úx̄ook
 tléil ḡunayéi=i-la-ts'úx̄-x-ook
 NEG INCEP=2SG.S-CL[-D, l, -I]-move.slightly-HAB-OPT
 “don't move it even the slightest bit” (NS73:137)
- b. ḡunayéi at yasaxíx̄
 ḡunayéi=at-ÿa-sa-xíx̄-x
 INCEP=INDN.O-VSFC-CL[-D, s, -I]-move-HAB
 “it is beginning to move” (NS73:136)

8.4.17.7.2. Locative *aa*= “there”8.4.17.7.3. Rotatory *áa(-ÿax̄)*= “turning over”8.4.17.7.4. Adrotatory *shóo(-ÿax̄)*= “turning over endwise”8.4.17.7.5. Aqualocative *héeni*= “in water”

[[Probably contains *héen-i* with the suffix *-i* being the locative.]]

- (53) héeni woogut
 héeni=ÿu-Ø-Ø-gut
 AQLOC-PFV-3S-CL[-D, Ø, -I]-go.SG
 “he went into the water” (N66:127)

11. Also known as “initiative”, “inchoative”, or “ingressive”. “Inceptive” is Leer’s term and is easy to associate with inception, i.e. beginning of an action. “Inchoative” is traditional but obscure, “ingressive” is misleading because ingress or entry is not specified, and “initiative” implies a sense of volition which is not appropriate.

- 8.4.17.7.6. Abumbrative *gági*= “from hiding into open”
8.4.17.7.7. Absilvative *éēgi*= “from forest onto beach”
8.4.17.7.8. Abaquative *dāāgi*= “out of water onto shore”

<i>Suffix</i>	<i>Gloss</i>	<i>Name</i>
- <u>x</u> aa	MISS	amissive
- <u>án</u>	REST	restorative
-aa	SIM	simulative?
- <u>k</u>	CPL	coplural?
-shán ~ -ch'án	INTNS	intensive?
- <u>ák</u> w ~ -y <u>ák</u> w ~ -ch' <u>ák</u> w	DEPRV	deprivative
- <u>yí</u>	DENOM	denominal
-ee	LIAB	liabilitive?
-k ~ -kw	?	unknown
-ál' ~ -ch'ál'	?	unknown
-ch'	?	unknown
-nas	?	unknown
-nás'	?	unknown
-kát'	?	unknown

Table 8.17: Derivational suffixes (-1).

8.5. Suffixes

The suffix domain consists of a variety of different types of suffixes which appear in verb themes. Some are thematic and hence derivational, some are inflectional and interact with the tense-mood-aspect system. In addition there are the “root variation” suffixes which are mostly notional suffixes that account for variation of the verb root in vowel length, tone, and quality; an exception is the root variation suffix *-n* which appears along with other types of root variation in certain themes. The postverbs are actually enclitics rather than suffixes, but are grouped together with the other suffixes for descriptive simplicity.

8.5.1. Derivational (-1)

The derivational suffixes of position -1 are all associated with lexical semantic changes in the meaning of roots to which they are added. Table 8.17 contains a list of all the known suffixes as well as their gloss abbreviations and names. Some of the derivational suffixes are frequent, but most are rare. None seem to be fully productive, but the amissive *-xaa* and perhaps the restorative *-án* can be added to certain roots to derive new verbs.

<i>Verb</i>	<i>Pg.</i>	<i>Root</i>	<i>Meaning</i>
ʔúnχaa	270	ʔoon	miss the target when shooting
t'áchχaa	296	t'aach	miss the target when slapping
dzéiχaa	296	dzoo	miss the target when shooting in basketball
shátχaa	309	shaat	miss the target when grabbing at something
gwálχaa	319	gwaal	miss the target when punching with fist
k'ishχaa	337	k'eesh	miss the target when hitting with a bat
xíchχaa	341	xeech	miss the target when hitting with a bat

Table 8.18: Verb roots with amissive -χaa from Story & Naish (NS73).

A number of these suffixes are unique, occurring only on one verb root. In these cases, the status as a true suffix is proven by the fact that the verb root occurs elsewhere without the suffixal element, perhaps in a noun or in other verb themes. These unique or rare suffixes are difficult to describe in terms of their semantic content, and so are listed here as “unknown” in meaning. For a few I have proposed meanings which I am uncertain of, and so the function and associated name remain questionable. The coplural has a purely structural name based on the fact that it only cooccurs with the -2 plural suffix -x' (for which see §8.5.2.7).

8.5.1.1. Amissive -χaa

The amissive -χaa is the most semantically regular of all the -1 derivational suffixes. Every verb root that it appears with describes an action requiring some sort of aim, and -χaa reliably changes the meaning to that of aiming and missing the target.

Story & Naish (NS73:134) are not terribly helpful for analyzing this suffix as they provide no description of the verbs associated with it and only the simplest of examples. Under the heading “miss” they give the seven verbs which are listed in table 8.18 along with four third person subject forms that lack overt nouns. These examples are presented in glossed forms below.

- (54) a. ayawsi.únχaa
 ʔa-ÿa-ÿu-θ-si-ʔún-χaa
 3O-VSFC-PFV-3S-CL[-D, s, +I]-shoot-MISS
 “he shot and missed it” (NS73:134)

- b. *ayawligwálx̄aa*
 ʔa-ÿa-ÿu-∅-li-gwál-x̄aa
 3O-VSFC-PFV-3S-CL[-D, l, +I]-punch-MISS
 “he punched and missed it” (NS73:134)
- c. *ayawlit’áchx̄aa*
 ʔa-ÿa-ÿu-∅-li-t’ách-x̄aa
 3O-VSFC-PFV-3S-CL[-D, l, +I]-slap-MISS
 “he slapped and missed it” (NS73:134)
- d. *ayawlidzéix̄aa*
 ʔa-ÿa-ÿu-∅-li-dzéi-x̄aa
 3O-VSFC-PFV-3S-CL[-D, l, +I]-throw-MISS
 “he threw and missed it” (NS73:134)
- e. *ayawlixíchx̄aa*
 ʔa-ÿa-ÿu-∅-li-xích-x̄aa
 3O-VSFC-PFV-3S-CL[-D, l, +I]-club-MISS
 “he clubbed and missed it” (NS73:134)
- f. *ayawlik’ishx̄aa*
 ʔa-ÿa-ÿu-∅-li-k’ish-x̄aa
 3O-VSFC-PFV-3S-CL[-D, l, +I]-swing-MISS
 “he swung and missed it” (NS73:134)
- g. *ayawlishátx̄aa*
 ʔa-ÿa-ÿu-∅-li-shát-x̄aa
 3O-VSFC-PFV-3S-CL[-D, l, +I]-grab-MISS
 “he grabbed and missed it” (NS73:134)

Each of these verbs can be compared to a regular non-amissive form to highlight the differences between the amissive form and the regular form. The following sentences show how the verb *O-S-CL[-D, ∅]-ʔoon* “shoot” is changed to the amissive form *O-ÿa-S-CL[-D, s]-ʔún-x̄aa*.

- (55) a. *dzískw x̄waa.ún*
dzískw ∅-ÿu-x̄a-ÿa-ʔún
 moose 3O-PFV-1SG.S-CL[-D, ∅, +I]-shoot
 “I shot a moose” (NS73:188)

- b. %dzískw yaḵwsi.únḵaa
 dzískw 0-ÿa-ÿu-ḵa-si-ʔún-ḵaa
 moose 3O-VSFC-PFV-1SG.S-CL[-D, s, +I]-shoot-MISS
 “I shot the moose and missed”
- c. sh woodi.ún
 sh-ÿu-0-di-ʔún
 RFLX.O-PFV-3S-CL[+D, 0, +I]-shoot
 “he shot himself” (NS73:188)
- d. %sh yawdzi.únḵaa
 sh-ÿa-ÿu-0-dzi-ʔún-ḵaa
 RFLX.O-VSFC-PFV-3S-CL[+D, s, +I]-shoot-MISS
 “he shot himself and missed”

In both novel forms the *ya-* prefix is added, and both have the S component changed from 0 to s, as well as the *-ḵaa* attached to the end. Other than that, the verb is unchanged between the regular form and the amissive form. Also note that the reflexive *sh-* requires middle voice which causes the D component of the classifier to change from -D to +D, as described in §8.4.1.1.1. This is retained with the change from the regular to the amissive form.

This example makes it clear that the amissive suffix *-ḵaa*, while the most obvious sign, is not the only component of the amissive verb form. In addition to the suffix *-ḵaa*, the amissive also adds the vertical surface *ya-* prefix (see §8.4.11) which here probably has its basic meaning of “vertical surface”, and the S component of the classifier is changed from the original series to either the s or l series.

[[Note that the amissive may not be able to occur in any nonperfective forms, since it’s likely that in Tlingit one cannot “be shooting and missing” as a unitary action.]]

The verb root *gwaal* describes the action of punching with a fist. Two uses of the regular non-amissive form can be seen below.

- (56) a. basketball akaawagwál
 basketball a-ka-0-ÿa-gwál
 basketball 3O-HSFC-3S-CL[-D, 0, +I]-punch
 “he punched the basketball” (NS73:110)

- b. xat yagwált
 $\text{xat-ya-}\emptyset\text{-}\emptyset\text{-gwál-t}$
 1SG.O-VSFC-3S-CL[-D, \emptyset , -I]-punch-??
 “he kept punching me in the face” (NS73:110)

Given the two sentences above we can propose the following two novel amissive forms. [What is the *-t* suffix that appears to mean “keep doing” or “repeatedly”? It requires *-I* apparently. Is it the serial or successive?]

- (57) a. %basketball akayawligwálxaa
 basketball a-ka-ya-yü- \emptyset -li-gwál-xaa
 basketball 3O-HSFC-VSFC-PFV-3S-CL[-D, *l*, +I]-punch-MISS
 “he punched the basketball and missed”
- b. %xat yalgwálxaaat
 $\text{xat-ya-}\emptyset\text{-l-gwál-xaa-t}$
 1SG.O-VSFC-3S-CL[-D, *l*, -I]-punch-MISS-??
 “he kept punching me in the face and missing”

Although most of the verbs it occurs with are clearly traditional, the meaning associated with *dzéixaa* is clearly modern. This verb was probably transferred from a more traditional activity of throwing things that is now unknown, just as the nouns *gāatl* and *kaax* no longer commonly refer to bracket fungus (*Fomitopsis officinalis* Laricifomes officinalis (Vill.) Kotl. & Pouzar) and blue or ruffed grouse (*Dendragapus obscurus* Say or *Bonasa umbellus* L.), but instead mean pilot bread and chicken (*Gallus gallus domesticus* L.).

Unlike most other *-I* suffixes, it is possible that the amissive is still productive in modern Tlingit. Thus the *-xaa* suffix might still be extended to other verbs which involve the activity of aiming for a target. A hypothetical example of this would be a verb root *taak* “poke” combined with *-xaa* to form *ták-xaa* meaning “poke and miss”. In a concocted verb **ka-S-CL[-D, \emptyset]-taak* “to type (on a keyboard), to play (a keyboard)” we could then form **ka-S-CL[-D, *s*]-ták-xaa* “S to typo, to make a typing mistake”, and thus **kaχwsitákxaa* “I typoed”.

- (58) %kaχwalitákxaa
 ka-yü-xa-li-ták-xaa
 HSFC-PFV-1SG.S-CL[-D, *l*, +I]-poke-MISS
 “I typoed”, “I poked a surface and missed”

Another more traditional activity which could probably support the use of the amissive is shooting with a bow and arrow, the verb *O-S-CL[-D, Ø]-t'ook* (NS73:188). Adding the amissive would produce **O-ÿa-S-CL[-D, s]-t'úk-xaa*, as might be used in the example below.

- (59) a. núkt x̣waat'úk
 núkt Ø-ÿu-x̣a-ÿa-t'úk
 grouse 3O-PFV-1SG.S-CL[-D, Ø, +I]-shoot.bow
 “I shot a grouse (with a bow and arrow)”
- b. %núkt yaḥwasit'úkx̣aa
 núkt Ø-ÿu-x̣a-si-t'úk-x̣aa
 grouse 3S-PFV-1SG.S-CL[-D, s, +I]-shoot.bow-MISS
 “I shot and missed a grouse (with a bow and arrow)”

8.5.1.2. Restorative -án

<i>Verb</i>	<i>Pg.</i>	<i>Root</i>	<i>Meaning</i>
haanán	274	haan	(sg) restore confidence by reelection
naaḡán	284	naak	(pl) restore confidence by reelection
xeexán	325	xeex	be restored to normality; become normal
taanán	292	taan	reconsider; set bone or joint to correct position
x̣eenán	338	x̣een	get back into joint by itself

Table 8.19: Verb roots with restorative -án from Story & Naish (NS73).

- (60) a. x̣'aháat x̣ánt yándeí ḳkwaháan
 x̣'aháat x̣án-t yándeí-ḳkwa-Ø-háan
 door near-PNCT TERM.ALL-1SG.S.FUT-CL[-D, Ø, -I]-stand
 “I’m going to go stand by the door” (NS73:209)
- b. daak wududzihán
 daak-Ø-ÿu-du-dzi-hán
 DOWN-3O-PFV-INDH.S-CL[+D, s, +I]-stand
 “he was dropped from office” (S66:56)

- c. a $t\acute{o}o\bar{x}$ yawdudzihaanán
 ?a $t\acute{o}o\bar{x}$ \emptyset -ya- $\ddot{y}u$ -du-dzi-haan-án
 it inside-PERT 3O-VSFC-PFV-3OBV.S-CL[+D, s, +I]-vote.SG-REST
 “they reelected him” (NS73:172)
- d. gán kát tunák
 gán ká-t tu- \emptyset -nák
 firewood surface-PNCT 1PL.S-CL[-D, \emptyset , -I]-stand
 “we are standing on the firewood” (NS73:209)
- e. a $t\acute{o}o\bar{x}$ has yawdudzinaaḡán
 ?a $t\acute{o}o\bar{x}$ has-ya- $\ddot{y}u$ -du-dzi-naak-án
 it inside-PERT PL-3O-VSFC-PFV-3OBV.S-CL[+D, s, +I]-vote.PL- REST
 “they reelected them” (NS73:172)
- (61) a. a $daa\bar{x}$ ágé tuyawditaanán?
 ?a $daa\bar{x}$?ágé tu-ya- $\ddot{y}u$ - \emptyset -di-taan-án
 it around-PERT FOCYN 3O-mind-VSFC-PFV-3S-CL[+D, \emptyset , +I]-carry- REST
 “did he reconsider it?” (NS73:168)
- b. $a\bar{x}$ káani hídi woo.oo
 ? $a\bar{x}$ káan- $\ddot{y}i$ hit- $\ddot{y}i$ $\ddot{y}u$ - \emptyset -?oo
 1SG.PSS aff.br-PSS house-PSS PFV-CL[-D, \emptyset , -I]-own
 $daa\bar{x}$ tuyaxwditaanán
 $daa\bar{x}$ tu-ya- $\ddot{y}u$ - \bar{x} a-di-taan-án
 around-PERT mind-VSFC-PFV-1SG.S-CL[+D, \emptyset , +I]-carry-REST
 “I reconsidered (buying and) owning my brother-in-law’s house” (NS73:168)
- (62) a. a $yá\bar{x}$ guyagaxdutaanán
 [?a $yá\bar{x}$] gu-ya-gaxdu- \emptyset -taan-án
 correct base-VSFC-INDH.S.FUT-CL[-D, \emptyset , -I]-carry-REST
 “they are going to put it (the bone) back in place” (NS73:163)
- b. $a\bar{x}$ jín a $yí\bar{x}$ gyanataanán!
 ? $a\bar{x}$ jín ?a $yík\bar{x}$ gu-ya-na- \emptyset -taan-án
 1SG.PSS arm it inside-PERT base-VSFC-NCNJ-CL[-D, \emptyset , -I]-carry-REST
 “put my arm back in joint!” (NS73:163)

- (63) a. aax kei guwjixín
 ʔaa-x kei-gu-ÿu-θ-ji-xín
 3OBV.PRON-PERT UP-base-PFV-3S-CL[+D, sh, +I]-fall
 “he dislocated it” (S66:56)
- b. a yíx guyawjixeenán
 ʔa yík-x gu-ya-ÿu-θ-ji-xeen-án
 it inside-PERT base-VSFC-PFV-3S-CL[+D, sh, +I]-fall-REST
 “it got back into joint” (NS73:99)
- (64) a. du kusteeyí shágdé yax yakḡwaxeexán
 du kustee-ÿí shágdé yax-ya-kḡwa-θ-xeex-án
 3SG.PSS life-PSS DUB TERM-VSFC-3S.FUT-CL[-D, θ, -I]-occur- REST
 “maybe his life will get back to normal” (NS73:172)

8.5.1.3. Simulative *-aa*8.5.1.4. Coplural *-k*

- (65) a. diyát'x'
 θ-di-yát'-x'
 3S-CL[+D, θ, +I]-long-PL
 “they're long” (S66:59)
- b. diyát'kx'
 θ-di-yát'-k-x'
 3S-CL[+D, θ, +I]-long-CPL-PL
 “they're all very long” (S66:59)

8.5.1.5. Intensive *-shan ~ -ch'an*

- (66) a. x'akwli.áaxch'an
 x'a-ka-ÿu-θ-li-ʔáax-ch'an
 mouth-HSFC-PFV-3S-CL[-D, l, +I]-hear-INTNS
 “he is a fascinating speaker” (NS73:87)

- b. du shkalneegí x'akwli.áaxch'an
 du shkalneek-yí x'a-ka-yü-Ø-li-ʔáax-ch'an
 3PSS story-PSS mouth-HSFC-PFV-3S-CL[-D, l, +I]-hear-INTNS
 "his story is fascinating" (NS73:87)
- (67) a. yéi xwaajée
 yéi-Ø-yü-xa-ya-jée
 THUS-3O-PFV-1SG.S-CL[-D, Ø, +I]-surmise
 kei kaguxlatées'shan
 kei=ka-gux-la-tées'-shan
 UP-HSFC-3S.FUT-CL[-D, l, -I]-stare-INTNS
 "I think it will be fascinating (to watch)" (NS73:87)
- b. ax toowáa koolitées'shan
 ax tu-yü: ka-yü-Ø-li-tées'-shan
 1SG.PSS mind-PSS-LOC HSFC-PFV-3S-CL[-D, l, +I]-stare-INTNS
 "it is fascinating to me" (NS73:87)
- (68) a. teet jiwustaan koolixéetl'shani
 teet ji-yü-Ø-s-taan ka-yü-Ø-li-xéetl'-shan-yí
 wave hand-PFV-3S-CL-carry HSFC-PFV-3S-CL[-D, l, +I]-fear- INTNS-ATTR
 át x sitee
 ʔát-x Ø-si-tee
 it-PERT 3O-CL-be
 "it's a dangerous thing when the waves are beating" (NS73:63)
- (69) a. ee k'oodás'i kashix'wáal'shan
 ʔee k'oodás-yí Ø-ka-shi-x'wáal'-shan
 2SG.PSS shirt-PSS 3O-HSFC-CL[-D, sh, +I]-soft-INTNS
 "your shirt is as soft as down" (NS73:201)
- b. yáa x'óow tléil koolx'wáal'shan
 yáa x'óow tléil Ø-ka-yü-l-x'wáal'-shan
 DET.MDIST blanket NEG 3O-HSFC-PFV-CL[-D, l, -I]-soft-INTNS
 "this blanket has no nap (on it)" (NS73:201)

8.5.1.6. Deprivative *-(y)akw*

- (70) a. *aḡ jín kawdi.éiyakw*
?aḡ jín 0-ka-ÿu-di-?éi-yakw
 1SG.PSS hand 3O-HSFC-PFV-CL[+D, 0, +I]-injure-DPRV
 “my hand was injured and rendered useless” (NS73:114)
- (71) a. *shaaw ḡadus.éenin,*
shaaw 0-ḡa-du-s-?ée-n-ín
 gumboot 3O-GHCNJ-INDH.S-CL[-D, s, -I]-cook-N-CTNG
kadulnóox’akw
0-ka-du-l-nóox’-akw
 3O-HSFC-INDH.S-CL[-D, l, -I]-remove-DPRV
 “when they’ve cooked the gumboots, they remove the shell” (NS73:171)
- (72) a. *a yáanaḡ lich’éeyakw*
?a yáa-náḡ 0-li-ch’ée-yakw
 it PROX-PERL 3O-CL[-D, l, +I]-slow-DPRV
 “it’s too slow” (NS73:197)
- b. *atḡá teen ḡat ḡ’alich’éeyakw*
?atḡá-teen ḡat-ḡ’a-li-ch’ée-yakw
 food-INSTR 1SG.O-mouth-CL[-D, l, +I]-slow-DPRV
 “I’m slow at eating” (NS73:197)
- (73) a. *wéi ḡaat nalt’éilakw*
wéi ḡaat 0-na-0-tl’éil-akw
 DET.MDIST fish 3O-NCNJ-2SG.S-CL[-D, l, -I]-remove-DPRV
 “remove the milt from that salmon” (NS73:171)
- (74) a. *ḡaal’ nalḡeiyakw*
ḡaal’ 0-na-0-l-ḡei-yakw
 clam 3O-NCNJ-2SG.S-CL[-D, l, -I]-scoop-DPRV
 “scoop the meat out of that clam” (NS73:181)

8.5.1.7. Denominal *-yi*

8.5.1.8. Liabilitive *-ee*

8.5.1.9. Unknown *-k(w)*

<i>Verb</i>	<i>Pg.</i>	<i>Meaning</i>
s'óoshkw	303	pinch with fingers and thumb
tlékwk	311	be greedy, eat fast, eat like a pig
tl'úkwk	312	murmur, grumble
xwáchk	328	be paralyzed by sickness
káchk	336	be lame, limp

Table 8.20: Verb roots with unknown *-k ~ -kw* from Story & Naish (NS73).

8.5.1.9.1. Differences from repetitive

8.5.1.10. Unknown *-al' ~ -ch'ál'*

<i>Verb</i>	<i>Pg.</i>	<i>Meaning</i>
néegwal'	280	paint; make jam, preserves

Table 8.21: Verb roots with unknown *-ál' ~ -ch'ál'* from Story & Naish (NS73).

8.5.1.11. Unknown *-ch'*

<i>Verb</i>	<i>Pg.</i>	<i>Meaning</i>
geigách'	332	play on swings

Table 8.22: Verb roots with unknown *-ch'* from Story & Naish (NS73).

8.5.1.12. Unknown *-ákʷ*

<i>Verb</i>	<i>Pg.</i>	<i>Root</i>	<i>Meaning</i>
seiǵákʷ	300	saa ₂ ?	regain breath, get one's wind back

Table 8.23: Verb roots with unknown *-ákʷ* from Story & Naish (NS73).

8.5.1.12.1. Appearance in nominals

8.5.1.13. Unknown *-nas* and *-náś'*

<i>Verb</i>	<i>Pg.</i>	<i>Meaning</i>
ǵéenas	334	ask to exchange in close in-law relationship

Table 8.24: Verb roots with unknown *-nas* from Story & Naish (NS73).

<i>Verb</i>	<i>Pg.</i>	<i>Meaning</i>
ǵaanás'	334	travel by raft

Table 8.25: Verb roots with unknown *-náś'* from Story & Naish (NS73).

8.5.1.13.1. Possibility of being identical

8.5.1.14. Unknown *-át'*

<i>Verb</i>	<i>Pg.</i>	<i>Meaning</i>
tl'eekát'	311	thread stick through to stiffen meat for cooking

Table 8.26: Verb roots with unknown *-át'* from Story & Naish (NS73).

8.5.2. Durational (-2)

8.5.2.1. Frequentive -ch

- (75) a. át nadatísch
 ʔá-t na- \emptyset -da-tís-ch
 it-PERT NCNJ-3S-CL[+D, \emptyset , -I]-shuffle-FREQ
 “they shuffle around noisily on it” (NS73:190)

8.5.2.2. Repetitive -k(w)

- (76) a. *S-CL[-D, \emptyset]-ʔaat* “S go (pl)”
 yoo s ya.átk
 yoo=s- \emptyset -yä-ʔát-k
 ALT=PL-3S-CL[-D, \emptyset , -I]-GO.PL-REP
 “they go to and fro” (S66:104)
- b. *O-yä-S-CL[-D, s]-kaa* “S say O”
 yéi yoo a yasikéik
 yéi=yoo=a-yä- \emptyset -si-kéi-k
 THUS=ALT=3O-VSFC-CL[-D, s, +I]-tell-REP
 “he says so (again and again)” (S66:104)

8.5.2.3. Habitual -x

- (77) a. *O-CL[-D, \emptyset]-be* “O be”
 áa yéi haa teex
 ʔá:- yéi=haa- \emptyset -tee-x
 there-LOC THUS-1PL.S-CL[-D, \emptyset , -I]-be-HAB
 “we stay there” (S66:104)
- b. *S-CL[-D, \emptyset]-goot* “S go”
 ġunayéi gút-x
 ġunayéi= \emptyset - \emptyset -gút-x
 INCEP=3S-CL[-D, \emptyset , -I]-GO.SG-HAB
 “he always starts going” (NS73:336)

- (81) a. nadáakw akaawagwál
 nadáakw a-ka-ÿu-θ-ÿa-gwál
 table 3O-HSFC-PFV-3S-CL[-D, θ, +I]-knock
 “he knocked on the table” (NS73:120)
- b. kanagwáls’
 ka-na-θ-θ-gwál-s’
 HSFC-NCNJ-2SG.S-CL[-D, θ, -I]-knock-SER
 “knock!” (imp.) (NS73:58)
- c. x’áwool kadugwáls’
 x’áwool θ-ka-du-θ-gwál-s’
 door 3O-HSFC-INDH.S-CL[-D, θ, -I]-knock-SER
 “someone is knocking (on) the door” (NS73:120)

8.5.2.6. Unknown -l’

- (82) a. akawlixákw
 a-ka-ÿu-θ-li-xákw
 3O-HSFC-PFV-3S-CL[-D, l, +I]-grind
 “he ground it up”
- (83) a. aklaxákwl’
 a-ka-θ-la-xákw-l’
 3O-HSFC-3S-CL[-D, l, -I]-grind-?
 “he’s grinding it” (S66:58)
- b. dleey aklaxákwl’
 dleey a-ka-θ-la-xákw-l’
 meat 3O-HSFC-3S-CL[-D, l, -I]-grind-?
 “he’s grinding meat” (NS73:102)

8.5.2.7. Plural object -x’

- (84) a. wéi káa ligéi
 wéi káa 0-li-géi
 DEM.MDIST man 3O-CL[-D, l, +I]-big
 “that man is tall”
- b. wéi sháa dligéix’
 wéi sháa 0-dli-géi-x’
 DEM.MDIST woman.PL 3O-CL[+D, l, +I]-big-PLO
 “those women are tall” (s66:57)
- c. ligéi
 0-li-géi
 3O-CL[-D, l, +I]-big
 “it’s big”
- d. digéix’
 0-di-géi-x’
 3O-CL[+D, 0, +I]-big-PLO
 “they’re big” (s66:58)
- (85) a. at kwáchx’
 at-0-0-kwách-x’
 INDN.O-3S-CL[-D, 0, -I]-grab.handful-PLO
 “he’s taking handfuls of stuff” (s66:58)
- (86) a. gáal’ yaa anas.ín
 gáal’ yaa-a-na-0-s-ʔín
 clam ALONG-3O-NCNJ-3S-CL[-D, s, -I]-carry.FC
 “he’s carrying clams (in a bucket)” (NS73:42)
- b. at sa.ínx’
 at-0-sa-ʔín-x’
 INDH.O-3S-CL[-D, s, -I]-carry.FC-PLO
 “he’s taking stuff in a container” (s66:58)

- (87) a. *ldakát haadéi yakkwasaqóox*
ldakát haa-déi Ø-ya-kkwa-sa-qóox
 all here-ALL 3O-VSFC-1SG.S.FUT-CL[-D, s, -I]-transport.boat
 “I’ll bring everything here by boat” (NS73:233)
- b. *yawtusikúxx’*
Ø-ya-ÿu-tu-si-kúx-x’
 3O-VSFC-PFV-1PL.S-CL[-D, s, +I]-transport.boat-PLO
 “we transported it by boat” (s66:58)
- (88) a. *kíndei at sayíkx’*
kíndei-at-sa-yík-x’
 UP.ALL-INDN.O-CL[-D, s, -I]-PLO
 “haul the stuff upward” (imp.) (s66:58)
- (89) a. *x’alitseen*
Ø-x’á-li-tseen
 3O-mouth-CL[-D, l, +I]-expensive
 “it’s expensive” (s66:58)
- b. *x’adlitsínkx’*
Ø-x’a-dli-tsín-k-x’
 3O-mouth-CL[+D, l, +I]-expensive-CPL-PLO
 “they’re all very expensive” (id.)
- (90) a. *daxáchx’i*
Ø-da-xách-x’-ÿi
 3O-CL[+D, Ø, -I]-tow-PLO-ATTR
 “tugboat” (s66:58)
- (91) a. *diyát’x’*
Ø-di-yát’-x’
 3S-CL[+D, Ø, +I]-long-PLO
 “they’re long” (s66:59)

- b. diyát'kx'
 0-di-yát'-k-x'
 3S-CL[+D, 0, +I]-long-CPL-PLO
 “they’re all very long” (id.)

- (92) a. áa yéi du.úxx'
 ʔá-: yéi=0-du-0-ʔúx-x'
 it-LOC THUS-3O-3OBV.S-CL[-D, 0, -I]-??-PLO
 “they put stuff there” (s66:59)

8.5.2.8. Plural object -t'

- (93) a. shaawát wududlisháat
 shaawát \emptyset -ÿu-du-dli-sháat
 woman 3O-PFV-INDH.S-CL[+D, l, +I]-capture
 “they captured a woman” (s66:57)
- b. sháa wududlishátt’
 sháa \emptyset -ÿu-du-dli-shát-t’
 woman.PL 3O-PFV-INDH.S-CL[+D, l, +I]-capture-PLO
 “they captured the women” (s66:57)

8.5.3. Root variation (-3)

8.5.3.1. Synchronic systems of variation

8.5.3.1.1. Tongass variation system

8.5.3.1.2. Northern variation system

8.5.3.1.3. Southern variation system

8.5.3.2. Pre-Tlingit aspectual suffixes

8.5.3.2.1. Apparent functions

8.5.3.2.2. Comparison with Athabaskan and Eyak

8.5.3.2.3. Proto-Na-Dene aspectual suffixes

8.5.4. Inner mode (-4)

8.5.4.1. Contingent *-in ~ -un*8.5.4.2. Conditional *-ni*

- (94) a. át igútni
 ?á-t i-∅-gút-ni
 there-PNCT 2SG.S-CL[-D, ∅, -I]-go.SG-COND
 “when you get there” (s66:106)
- b. haat gútni
 haat-∅-∅-gút-ni
 HITHER-3S-CL[-D, ∅, -I]-go.SG-COND
 “if he comes here” (id.)
- c. (a kaax̣) at x̣áa núgwni
 (?a ka-x̣) at-∅-∅-x̣áa núgwni
 (it surface-PERT) INDN.O-3S-CL[-D, ∅, -I]-eat AUX.COND
 “if he eats (from it)” (id.)

8.5.5. Outer mode (-5)

8.5.5.1. Decessive *-een*

- (95) a. akahéix̣een
 a-ka-∅-∅-héix̣-*een*
 3O-HSFC-3S-CL[-D, ∅, -I]-plant-DEC
 “he used to plant” (s66:105)
- b. akahéix̣ noojeen
 a-ka-∅-∅-héix̣ noojeen
 3O-HSFC-3S-CL[-D, ∅, -I]-plant AUX.FREQ.DEC
 “he always used to plant” (id.)

8.5.5.2. Optative *-(ee)k̄*

- (96) a. gwál haax̄ ugoodeek̄
 gwál haax̄-u-θ-θ-goot-eēk̄
 DUB HITHER-IRR-3S-CL[-D, θ, -I]-go.SG-OPT
 “I wish he’d come here” (S66:105)
- (97) a. gu.aal kwshé x̄wax̄áak̄
 guʔaal kwshé θ-u-x̄a-θ-x̄áa-k̄
 OPT TENT 3O-IRR-1SG.S-CL[-D, θ, -I]-eat-OPT
 “I hope I eat it” (L91:222)
- (98) a. líl x̄wax̄áak̄
 lí-l θ-u-x̄a-θ-x̄áa-k̄
 PHIB-NEG 3O-IRR-1SG.S-CL[-D, θ, -I]-eat-OPT
 “let me not eat it” (L91:222)
- b. tléil áx̄ igoodeek̄
 tléil ʔá-x̄ i-θ-goot-eēk̄
 NEG there-PERT 2SG.S-CL[-D, θ, -I]-go.SG-OPT
 “don’t go there” (S66:105)

8.5.5.3. Attributive *-yi*8.5.5.4. Subordinate *-yi*

8.5.6. Postverbs (-6)

8.5.6.1. Frequentative =*nooch* ~ =*neech* ~ =*nukch*

- (99) a. sh kanx̄alneekch
 sh-ka-na-x̄a-l-neek-ch
 RFLX.O-HSFC-NCNJ-1SG.O-CL[+D, l, -I]-tell-FREQ
 “I always tell the story” (L91:211)

- b. sh kaᵛalneek nooch
 sh-ka-ᵛa-l-neek nooch
 RFLX.O-HSFC-1SG.S-CL[+D, l, -I]-tell AUX.FREQ
 “I always tell the story” (id.)

- 8.5.6.2. Frequentative decessive =*noojeen* ~ =*neejeen*
 8.5.6.3. Repetitive =*nóok* ~ =*néekw*
 8.5.6.4. Conditional =*núgwni* ~ =*nígwni*
 8.5.6.5. Contingent =*ḡanúgun* ~ =*ḡaníkᵛ* ~ =*ḡanígún*

9. *Verb function*

9.1. Tense-mood-aspect system

9.1.1. Declarative

9.1.1.1. Non-habitual

9.1.1.1.1. Perfective

9.1.1.1.2. Decessive perfective

9.1.1.1.3. Imperfective

9.1.1.1.4. Decessive imperfective

9.1.1.1.5. Future

9.1.1.1.6. Decessive future

9.1.1.1.7. Potential

9.1.1.1.8. Decessive potential

9.1.1.2. Habitual

9.1.1.2.1. Perfective habitual

9.1.1.2.2. Decessive perfective habitual

9.1.1.2.3. Imperfective habitual

9.1.1.2.4. Decessive imperfective habitual

9.1.1.2.5. Future habitual

9.1.1.2.6. Decessive future habitual

9.1.2. Deontic

9.1.2.0.7. Imperative

9.1.2.0.8. Hortative

9.1.2.0.9. Admonitive

9.1.2.0.10. Prohibitive

9.1.2.0.11. Optative

- 9.1.3. Circumstantial
 - 9.1.3.0.12. Consecutive
 - 9.1.3.0.13. Imperfective consecutive
 - 9.1.3.0.14. Future consecutive
 - 9.1.3.0.15. Conditional
 - 9.1.3.0.16. Imperfective conditional
 - 9.1.3.0.17. Future conditional
 - 9.1.3.0.18. Contingent
 - 9.1.3.0.19. Imperfective contingent
 - 9.1.3.0.20. Future contingent

9.2. Dependent clauses

- 9.2.1. Attributive
- 9.2.2. Subordinative
 - 9.2.2.1. Adjunct
 - 9.2.2.2. Complement
- 9.2.3. Gerundive

9.3. Transitivity

9.3.1. Active system

9.3.1.1. Unergativity and “intransitive”

9.3.1.2. Unaccusativity and “stative/objective”

9.3.2. Transitivity

9.3.3. Causativization

9.3.4. Detransitivization

9.4. Incorporation

9.5. Lexical classes

9.5.1. Non-motion

9.5.1.1. Stative

9.5.1.1.1. Descriptive stative

9.5.1.1.2. Dimensional stative

9.5.1.1.3. Cognitive stative

9.5.1.2. Processive

9.5.1.2.1. Telic

9.5.1.2.2. Telic with o-aspect

9.5.1.2.3. Atelic

9.5.1.2.4. Atelic with invariant root

9.5.1.2.5. Ambitelic

- 9.5.1.3. Eventive
 - 9.5.1.3.1. Intentional
 - 9.5.1.3.2. Involuntary
- 9.5.2. Motion
 - 9.5.2.1. Telic
 - 9.5.2.1.1. Telic \emptyset -conjugation
 - 9.5.2.1.2. Telic *-ch* iterative
 - 9.5.2.1.3. Telic *-‘* iterative
 - 9.5.2.1.4. Telic *-x* iterative
 - 9.5.2.1.5. Telic *yoo=...-[+I]-...-k* iterative
 - 9.5.2.1.6. Telic *ya-u-* and *yaa=...-ch* iterative
 - 9.5.2.1.7. Telic *ya-u-* and *-x* iterative
 - 9.5.2.2. Atelic
 - 9.5.2.2.1. Atelic *na*-conjugation and *yoo=...-[+I]-...-k* iterative
 - 9.5.2.2.2. Atelic *na*-conjugation without iterative
 - 9.5.2.2.3. Atelic *ga*-conjugation
 - 9.5.2.2.4. Atelic *ḡa*-conjugation
- 9.5.2.3. Incorporated nominals
- 9.5.2.4. Extensional imperfectives
- 9.5.2.5. Dimensional and extensional imperfectives
- 9.5.2.6. Positional imperfectives

9.6. Classificatory verbs and noun classes

<i>Abbrev.</i>	<i>Class</i>	<i>Example nouns</i>
SRO	Solid Round Object	apple, stone, egg, knife, slice of bread
NCM	Non-Compact Matter	wad of wool, fake beard, bunch of grass
MM	Mushy Matter	butter, mud, ice cream, slouched drunkard
FFO	Flat Flexible Object	sheet of paper, coat, blanket, sack
SFO	Slender Flexible Object	rope, belt, chain, snake, earthworm
SSO	Slender Stiff Object	bone, pencil, cigarette, bow, broom
ANO	Animate Object	person, lizard, fish, bird, doll
LPB	Load, Pack, or Burden	pack, bed, armchair, mattress, saddle, log
OC	Open Container	bowl, bottle, box, mud in shovel, liquid in hands
PLO1	Plural Objects 1	eggs, poles, shirts, kittens, beds, seeds, pollen
PLO2	Plural Objects 2	seeds, coins, bunch of arrows, bunch of ants

Table 9.1: Noun classes in Navajo (R. W. Young 1995:3-8).

<i>Class</i>	<i>Example form</i>	<i>Noun</i>
Round/solid	tθe he-ʃuʃ ha	stone
Animate	ʃue he-ne ha	fish
Stick-like	detʃən teʃ-xáʃ ha	stick
Fabric-like	yú heʔər ha	cloth
Contained in cup	lídí he-niʃ ha	tea (in cup)
Contained in pail	naʃtʃəθ e heʃ-xes ha	(full) bag
Loose textured	tʃ'oy te-tʃər ha	grass
Mushy	hotʃ' əs te-tʃe ha	lard
Plural/ropelike {	t'así ʃá teʃ-déʃ ha	things
	tʃ'uli teʃ-déʃ ha	rope

Table 9.2: Verbs of handling for noun classes in Dëne Sų́liné (Chipewyan) (Cook 1986). Examples are “3rd person will throw *noun*”.

9.6. Classificatory verbs and noun classes

Like all Na-Dene languages, Tlingit has a system of classificatory verbs which depend on physical characteristics of an object referent.

<i>Abbrev.</i>	<i>Class</i>	<i>Example nouns</i>
GEN	General object	book, stone, brick, candy, unclassified
SRO	Small Round Object	coin, apple, ball, button, pinecone, egg
OWP	Object With Parts	belt, chair, radio, walkman
RFO	Round Framelike Object	bracelet, keyring, eyeglasses, string of beads
UFO	Uncoiled Flexible Object	rope, thread, bull kelp, spruce root, wire
CFO	Coiled Flexible Object	coil of spruce root, coil of rope, hank of yarn
FC	Filled Container	basket of berries, shovel of mud, jar of fish eggs
EC	Empty Container	cup, drum, bowl, pot, canoe, bucket, trash can
SSO	Slender Stiff Object	stick, rifle, broom, paddle, sapling, post, staff
SSS	Small Slender Stiff object	pencil, toothpick, splinter, knife, arrow, file
FFO	Flat Flexible Object	towel, shirt, flag, blanket, sail, pants, tent
AHO	Animate Holdable Object	baby, cat, dog, chicken, frog, sheep, downed bird
DWO	Dead Weight Object	corpse, carcass, sleeping child, unconscious body
BFO	Bundled Flexible Objects	bundle of blankets, bunch of shirts, pile of tarps
PLO	Plural Objects	tools, books, fistful of coins, handful of berries
...

Table 9.3: Tlingit noun classes.

9.6. Classificatory verbs and noun classes

<i>Abbrev.</i>	<i>Verb</i>	<i>Example form</i>	<i>Noun</i>
GEN	ÿa-tee	x'úx' yaa anatéen	book
SRO	ka-ÿa-tee	kooch'éit'aa yaa akanatéen	ball
OWP	si-tee	atshikóok yaa anastéen	radio
RFO	ka-si-tee	kées yaa akanastéen	bracelet
UFO	ji-ka-si-tee	tíx' yaa jikanastéen	rope
CFO	ji-ka-ÿa-tee	tíx' yaa jikanatéen	(coil of) rope
FC	si-ʔeen	káaxwei yaa anas.ín	(cup of) coffee
EC	ÿa-taan	gúx'aa yaa anátán	(empty) cup
SSO	si-taan	káas' yaa akanátán	stick
SSS	ka-si-taan	kooxídaa yaa akanastán	pencil
FFO	ÿa-ʔaax	k'oodás' yaa ana.áx	shirt
AHO	si-noo	keitl yaa anasnúk	dog
DWO	si-taa	cháatl yaa anastéin	(dead) halibut
BFO	li-naa	s'ísaa yaa analnán	(bundle of) sails
PLO	yei-si-nei	jishagóonx' yaa yéi anasneen	tools

Table 9.4: Verbs of handling for noun classes. Examples are all “3rd person is carrying *noun*”.

9.6. Classificatory verbs and noun classes

<i>Abbrev.</i>	<i>Verb</i>	<i>Example form</i>	<i>Noun</i>
GEN	ÿa-ḡeex'	x'úx' aawaḡíx'	book
SRO	ka-ÿa-ḡeex'	kooch'éit'aa akawooḡéex'	ball
OWP	si-ḡeex'	atshikóok awsiḡéex'	radio
RFO			
UFO			
CFO			
FC			
EC			
SSO			
SSS	ka-si-ḡeex'	kooxídaa akawooḡéex'	pencil
FFO			
AHO	ÿa-xeech	keitl aawaḡích	dog
DWO			
BFO			
PLO	ÿa-ḡeech		

Table 9.5: Verbs of throwing for noun classes.

9.6. Classificatory verbs and noun classes

<i>Abbrev.</i>	<i>Verb</i>	<i>Example form</i>	<i>Noun</i>
GEN	ÿa-t'ei	tákl aawat'ei	hammer
SRO	ka-ÿa-t'ei	k'wát' akaawat'ei	egg
OWP			
RFO			
UFO	si-t'ei	tíx' awsit'ei	rope
CFO			
FC			
EC			
SSO			
SSS	ka-si-t'ei	kooxídaa akawsit'ei	pencil
FFO			
AHO			
DWO			
BFO			
PLO			

Table 9.6: Verbs of finding for noun classes.

- 9.6.1. General object (GEN)
- 9.6.2. Small round object (SRO)
- 9.6.3. Object with parts (OWP)
- 9.6.4. Round framelike object (RFO)
- 9.6.5. Slender stiff object (SSO)
- 9.6.6. Small slender stiff object (SSS)
- 9.6.7. Uncoiled flexible object (UFO)
- 9.6.8. Coiled flexible object (CFO)
- 9.6.9. Flat flexible object (FFO)
- 9.6.10. Bundled flexible objects (BFO)
- 9.6.11. Filled container (FC)
- 9.6.12. Empty container (EC)
- 9.6.13. Animate holdable object (AHO)
- 9.6.14. Dead weight object (DWO)
- 9.6.15. Plural objects (PLO)
- 9.6.16. Other classes with defective paradigms

10. *Syntax*

Tlingit syntax is almost entirely unstudied. Naish (N66) made the first attempt to address the syntactic system of Tlingit, but did so using tagmemic theory which has since fallen out of fashion. Leer sketched Tlingit syntax in his dissertation (191:22–45) using a combination of ad hoc techniques and Sadock’s autolexical syntax. Seth Cable¹ is currently the foremost expert on Tlingit syntax, working largely in the generative syntax tradition (Government and Binding, Minimalist Program, etc.). His dissertation (Cable 2007) focused on certain syntactic properties of *sá* and the *wh*-questions with which it is used. Other problems he has addressed include various interrogative phenomena (Cable 2006*a*), the apparent freedom of word order (Cable 2009), and the underlying structure of free relative clauses (Cable 2005).

10.1. Word order

Tlingit can be described as having free word order,² as seen in the following examples from Cable (2009). (Note that the *a*- \sim \emptyset - alternation is predictable, see §8.4.15.6.1 for details.)

1. His website is <http://people.umass.edu/scable/>

2. Schäufele (1991) offers the better “phrase order”, but I will use the conventional term.

(100) a. SOV:

wé	shaawátch	xóots	awsiteen
[_S wé	shaawát-ch]	[_O xóots]	[_V a-ÿu-θ-si-teen]
[_S DEM.MDIST	woman-ERG]	[_O brown.bear]	[_V 3O-PFV-3S-CL[-D, s, +I]-see]

“the woman saw the bear”

b. SVO:

wé	shaawátch	wusiteen	xóots
[_S wé	shaawát-ch]	[_V θ-ÿu-θ-si-teen]	[_O xóots]
[_S DEM.MDIST	woman-ERG]	[_V 3O-PFV-3S-CL[-D, s, +I]-see]	[_O brown.bear]

c. OVS: xóots awsiteen wé shaawátch

d. OSV: xóots wé shaawátch wusiteen

e. VSO: awsiteen wé shaawátch xóots

f. VOS: awsiteen xóots wé shaawátch

Not all phrase orders are equal in Tlingit, however. Cable notes “there are of course discourse pragmatic effects associated with particular orders” (see §11.7), and further says “Keri Edwards (p.c.) reports that some speakers find the SVO and VSO orders ... to be awkward, characterizing them as ‘backwards’ and only said in great moments of excitement”.

[[See also §11.7 for effects of word order on discourse.]]

10.2. Transitivity

10.2.1. Causatives

10.2.2. Pseudopassives

10.3. Sentence types

10.3.1. Commands

10.3.2. Propositions

10.3.3. Requests

10.3.4. Declarations

10.3.5. Exclamations

10.3.6. Desideratives

10.3.7. Formulae

10.4. Focus

10.4.1. Focusing

10.4.2. Multiple foci

10.4.3. Extraposition

10.5. Topic

10.5.1. Topicality

10.5.2. Address

10.5.3. Interjections

10.6. Pronouns and anaphora

10.6.1. Pronouns

10.6.1.1. Differences between pronouns and pronominals

10.6.1.2. Personal pronouns

10.6.1.3. Discourse pronouns

10.6.1.4. Indefinite pronouns

10.6.1.5. Reflexives

10.6.1.6. Reciprocals

10.6.2. Antecedents

10.6.3. Locatives

10.6.4. Intersentential anaphora

10.7. Relativization

10.7.1. Subject relativization

10.7.2. Object relativization

10.8. Phrase structure

10.8.1. Noun phrases

10.8.2. Verb phrases

10.8.3. Postpositional phrases

10.9. Conjunction and coordination

10.10. Ellipsis

11. *Discourse phenomena*

11.1. Code-switching

The Tlingit speech community is today entirely bilingual in English. Many older speakers have English as an L2, having learned it during their early formal education around age ten or so, a fact evidenced by numerous types of interference despite decades of speaking mostly English. Younger speakers typically acquired English as an L1, contemporaneously with their acquisition of Tlingit. Because of this widespread bilingualism, code-switching is natural and common among all Tlingit speakers today.

I must note that I am not an expert on code-switching or bilingualism, and hence I can offer in this section only anecdotal evidence of Tlingit-English code-switching rather than an extensive analysis of the phenomenon. Nonetheless I hope that this will serve to at least inspire other researchers to investigate further. I also intend for this section to reassure language revitalizationists that code-switching is a natural phenomenon and should not be looked upon with concern by teachers and learners.

Code-switching from Tlingit to English and back is not uncommon in Tlingit narrative, although it is usually not very extensive. In contrast, code-switching from English to Tlingit and back is relatively common in English narrative. Thus although a long narrative in Tlingit might have only one or two phrases in English, a long narrative in English will often have occasional interjections of Tlingit words, names, and phrases. The latter does depend on the audience however, and when speaking to English monolinguals it is not uncommon for a Tlingit speaker to provide sequential translations of Tlingit elements injected in English narrative.

Dauenhauer & Dauenhauer (DD87) offer some examples of code switching selected from the narratives collected in their book *Haa Shuká, Our Ancestors*. They explain:

[English code-switching] is usually done for some kind of emphasis, sometimes for humor or to establish detachment or “aesthetic distance” from the story – but not because they don’t know the Tlingit word.

Dauenhauer & Dauenhauer give four different examples, each of a somewhat different type of code-switching. All are taken from *Shaadaax*’ Robert Zuboff’s telling of *Táax’aa* “Mosquito”.¹ The first two are in a single sentence, where *Shaadaax*’ is discussing his boat “Guide”.

- (101) a. Tle ch’u yées yadák’w_{x̄} x̄at sateeyída_{x̄}
 tle ch’u yées yát-k’-x̄ x̄at-sa-tee-ÿí-dax̄
 just even young child-DIM-PERT 1SG.O-CL[-D, s, -I]-be-ATTR-ABL
 s’eenáa yaakw a_{x̄} jee yéi wootee.
 s’eenáa yaakw a_{x̄} jín-: yéi=θ-ÿu-ÿa-tee
 lamp boat 1SG.PSS hand-LOC thus=3O-PFV-CL[-D, θ, +I]-be
 “From just when I was a young child I had a gas boat.”
- b. I had nineteen hundred and six model
- c. tle shóoguná_{x̄} come out_{x̄}
 tle shóogu-ná_{x̄} come out-x̄
 just first-PERL come out-PERT
 yaa nastéeni.
 ÿaa=θ-na-s-tée-n-ÿí
 along=3O-NCNJ-CL[+D, s, -I]-be-VAR-ATTR
 “from when they first came out.”

The next example is from a few moments later, where *Shaadaax*’ says that he had given one of his boats to his son who wrecked it.

- (102) a. Tle akawliwál’,
 tle a-ka-ÿu-θ-li-wál’
 just 3O-HSFC-PFV-3S-CL[-D, l, +I]-break
 “He just broke it (into many pieces),”
- b. he wrecked the boat,

1. This story is also known in English as “The Cannibal Giant”, and tells the story of a man who kills a giant cannibal whose ashes become mosquitos.

- c. wé a yíkt át
wé a yík-t á-t
DEM.MDIST 3N.PSS inside-PERT there-PERT
naᵾakúᵾji aa kúnáᵾ.
na-ᵾa-θ-kúᵾ-ch-ÿí aa kúnáᵾ
NCNJ-1SG.S-CL[-D, θ, -I]-go.boat-FREQ-ATTR PART very
“the one I used to go around a lot in.”

Another wonderful example is from *Kéet Yaanaayí* Willie Marks, telling the story of Naatsilanéi. ² In this story *Kéet Yaanaayí* code-switches between Tlingit and English a number of times, but at one point code-switches to Cantonese which he learned from cannery workers in his youth. The original Cantonese numbers are given in IPA with customary tone numbers.

- (103) a. Yet, gee, saam, sée,
/jat¹/ /ji⁶/ /sa:m¹/ /si:³/
one two three four
yóo áwé kei kawduwaḡíx'.
yóo=áwé=kei=θ-ka-ÿu-du-ÿa-ḡíx'
thus=FOC.MDIST=up=3O-HSFC-PFV-3OBV.S-CL[-D, θ, +I]-throw.SRO
“One, two, three, four, they tossed it up (in the air).”

2. This is the story of the man *Naatsilanéi* who creates killer whales (*kéet*, *Orcinus orca* L.) from yellow-cedar (*ᵾaay*, *Callitropsis nootkatensis* (D. Don) Florin) wood, whom he directs to kill his brothers in revenge for abandoning him.

- 11.2. Reference tracking
- 11.3. Point of view
- 11.4. Functions of relatives
- 11.5. Tense/aspect/mood in narratives
- 11.6. Topic shift
- 11.7. Word order
- 11.8. Ellipsis

12. *Language contact*

12.1. Russian

12.2. Chinook Jargon

12.3. English

12.4. Effects on other languages

12.4.1. English

English has borrowed two substantive nouns from Tlingit, namely *nagoonberry* and *hooch*, as well as a wide variety of placenames and personal names.

12.4.2. Kaska

The Kaska language is an Athabaskan language spoken in the southeastern Yukon Territory and northeastern British Columbia. Traditional Kaska territory borders the Interior Tlingit as well as the Tahltan. Moore (2002:225–255) discusses historical Tlingit–Kaska interactions, and offers a short list of loanwords in Kaska which derive from Tlingit.

<i>Tlingit</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Kaska</i>	<i>English</i>
hít-ÿí	house-PSS	hédi	house
gúx'aa	cup, dipper	kuk'aa	cup
táax'al'	needle	taak'átl	needle
óonaa	gun	úúnee	gun
at tuteiyí	bullet	etutèé' ~ eedutèé'	bullet
gamdáan	horse	gúndáán	horse
x'úx'	paper, membrane	k'úúk	paper, book
s'eik	smoke	ts'íik	cigarette
sukwnéin	flour	súgunèé' ~ súnèé'	flour
k'únts'	potato	k'ųųts ~ k'uuts	potato

Table 12.1: Tlingit loanwords in the Kaska language, adapted from Moore 2002:229. Note that the Tlingit forms given here are specific to the Interior dialect.

13. *Genealogy*

Speculation about the relationship of Tlingit to other languages has a long, distinguished history.

Buschmann (1857) made an early attempt to connect Tlingit to the Akimel O'odham (Pima) language of Arizona and Sonora. He seems to have worked from Veniaminov's publication about Tlingit (Veniaminov 1846), which poorly represented the phoneme system of Tlingit and hence was not very effective for historical-comparative work. The results that Buschmann offered are predictably unconvincing, although it is intriguing that his comparandum of Akimel O'odham was not very geographically distant from the Southern Athabaskan languages which have proven today to be distant relatives of Tlingit.

13.1. Pre-Tlingit

13.2. Leer's endohybrid hypothesis

13.3. Proto-Na-Dene

An outstanding problem in the reconstruction of Na-Dene is the relative paucity of cognate nouns between the Athabaskan languages and Tlingit.

13.4. Dene-Yeniseic hypothesis

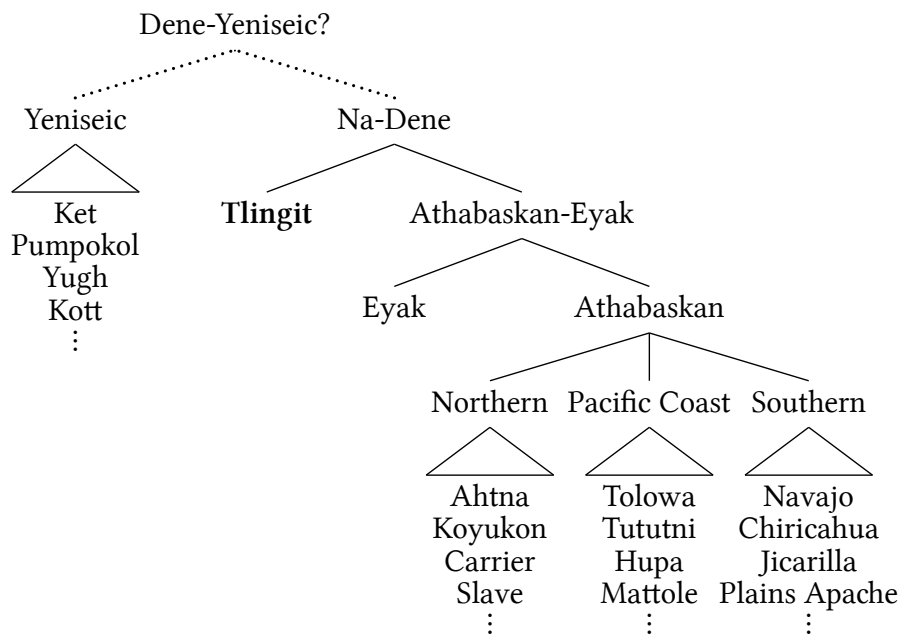


Figure 13.1: Na-Dene genealogical relationships. Haida is excluded. Athabaskan organization is geographic and not historical.

Appendices

A. Sample texts

A.1. Other sources for written Tlingit

A.1.1. Published works

A.1.2. Unpublished sources

A.2. Other sources for spoken Tlingit

Public archives. Private archives. Unpublished transcriptions.

A.3. Conversational text

A.4. Oral history text

B. Dictionary

This dictionary provides a list of all Tlingit words which appear in the examples and texts in this grammar. Entries are separated by type, with one section for verb themes, one section for nouns, and another section for words of all other types (particles, adjectives, adverbs).

B.1. Verb themes

This section is organized similarly to the system used by Story & Naish (NS73) for the Tlingit–English part of that dictionary. Thus themes are organized alphabetically by root, and then subsequently by classifier and thematic prefixes. Note that themes appearing in this grammar may not exist in NS73, and themes that do appear in both may have a different meaning here than given by Story & Naish.

B.2. Nouns

This section is organized alphabetically by initial letter, ignoring any obligatory possessors for inalienable nouns. Nouns listed here which appear in LHR01 are noted **[[how]]**, and those which appear in NSDL76 are noted **[[how]]**.

B.3. Others

This section is simply organized alphabetically by initial letter.

C. Phoneme illustrations

C.1. Consonants

The following table gives example nouns with each phonemic consonant in Tlingit appearing in both word-initial and word-final positions. The example words are adapted from Maddieson, Smith, & Bessell (2001) with various corrections, changes, and additions. Parts of the table filled with em dashes indicate positions where consonants which do not occur. Thus aspirated obstruents do not occur in the coda, nor are glottal consonants permitted finally. The only lacuna in this table is final /q'/; this is an accidental gap given both that labialized /q^w/ exists and that Tlingit speakers feel that final /q'/ is possible but just does not occur. The orthographic symbols for unaspirated consonants are applicable only to syllable-initial position since the symbols for aspirated consonants are used for coda consonants which are actually unaspirated.

	Cons	Orth	Initial		Final	
			Word	Translation	Word	Translation
Apical	t	<i>d</i>	tá:	weasel	ʔa:t	father's sister
	t ^h	<i>t</i>	t ^h a:n	sealion	—	—
	t'	<i>t'</i>	t'á:	board	χ ^w á:t	dolly varden
	ts	<i>dz</i>	t ^s a:s	thong	k ^h ats	lime
	ts ^h	<i>ts</i>	ts ^h a:	harbor seal	—	—
	ts'	<i>ts'</i>	ts'áqɬ	filth, dirt, stain	xa:ts'	distant blue sky
	s	<i>s</i>	sa:k	eulachon	ʔa:s	tree, spruce
	s'	<i>s'</i>	s'a:w	dungeness crab	ha:s'	vomit
	n	<i>n</i>	na:	clan, tribe	ʔa:n	town, land

(continued on next page)

	Cons	Orth	Initial		Final	
			Word	Translation	Word	Translation
Palatal	tʃ	j	tʃá:tʃi	snowshoe	qá:tʃ	rug
	tʃ ^h	ch	tʃ ^h a:n	mother-in-law	—	—
	tʃ'	ch'	tʃ'á:k'	bald eagle	ʃá:tʃ'	needlefish
	ʃ	sh	ʃa:	mountain	tʃá:ʃ	brush (plants)
	j	y	ja:	sea trout	t ^h a:j	hot springs
Lateral	tɬ	dl	tɬe:t	snow	tʃ ^h a:tɬ	halibut
	tɬ ^h	tl	tɬ ^h a:	mother	—	—
	tɬ'	tl'	tɬ'e:q	finger	tɬ'á:tɬ'	yellow
	ɬ	l	ɬáx'	heron, crane	ʃá:ɬ	fish trap
	ɬ'	l'	ɬ'á:	breast	ká:ɬ	clam
Velar	k	g	ka:w	drum, hour	ɬ'a:k	dress
	k ^h	k	k ^h a:	yardstick	—	—
	k'	k'	k'á:χ'	fish kidney	k ^h a:k'	forehead
	k ^w	gw	k ^w é:ɬ	sack	na:k ^w	medicine
	k ^{hw}	kw	k ^{hw} á:n	smallpox	—	—
	k ^w	k ^w	k ^w át'	bird's egg	?a:k ^w	small lake
	x	x	xa:k	empty seashell	s'áx	starfish
	x'	x'	x'á:	point	x'á:x'	apple
	x ^w	xw	x ^w átʃa:	scraper	ká:x ^w	duck
	x ^w	x ^w	x ^w án	boot	qá:x ^w	herring roe
	w	w	wa:q	eye	ja:w	herring
	†uɥ	ÿ	uɥá	face, horiz. sfc.	uɥa:uɥ	whale
Uvular	q	ḡ	qá:tɬ	pilot bread	tɬ'á:q	arrowhead
	q ^h	k	q ^h ák ^w	basket	—	—
	q'	k'	q'á:tʃ'	red seaweed	?	?
	q ^w	ḡw	q ^w á:ɬ'	fart	ná:q ^w	octopus
	q ^{hw}	k ^w	q ^{hw} á:n	people, tribe	—	—
	q ^w	k ^w	q ^w átɬ	cooking pot	q'é:q ^w	knife wound
	χ	x	χa:k ^w	finger nail	s'á:χ	groundhog
	χ'	x'	χ'á:k ^w	kokanee	tʃ ^h e:χ'	thimbleberry
	χ ^w	xw	χ ^w astá:	canvas, denim	húnχ ^w	older brother
	χ ^w	x ^w	χ ^w á:ɬ'	down feathers	ɬé:χ ^w	red face paint

(continued on next page)

	<i>Cons</i>	<i>Orth</i>	<i>Initial</i>		<i>Final</i>	
			<i>Word</i>	<i>Translation</i>	<i>Word</i>	<i>Translation</i>
<i>Glottal</i>	ʔ	.	ʔá:	lake	—	—
	%ʔ ^w	.w	[[ʔ]]	[[ʔ]]	—	—
	h	<i>h</i>	há:t	riptide	—	—
	%h ^w	<i>hw</i>	ji:h ^w a:n	you (pl.)	—	—

Table C.2: Words illustrating Tlingit consonants. Adapted and extended from Maddieson, Smith, & Bessell (2001).

C.2. Vowels

Vow.	Open		Closed	
	Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
/i:/	/sí:/	doll	/k ^h ít:/	killer whale
/i/	/k'í/	base, rump	/s'in/	carrot
/e:/	/te:/	trail, path, road	/ne:t/	home, indoors
/e/	/sé/	voice	/nes'/	lotion, liniment
/a:/	/sá:/	name	/ha:t/	current, flow
/a/	/fá/	head	/qáχ/	rabbit
/u:/	/χu:/	among	/kú:n/	gold
/u/	/fú/	end	/k ^h út/	nest

Table C.3: Vowels in closed and open syllables.

Rnd.	Vow.	Word	Meaning	
-	{	/i:/	/hí:n/	fresh water, river
		/i/	/hít/	house, building
+	{	/u:/	/hu:n/	sale, commerce
		/u/	/húnχ ^w /	older brother

Table C.4: Front unrounded and back rounded vowels in comparison.

D. *Verb paradigms*

In this chapter I offer a handful of illustrative verb paradigms for the major types of verb themes.

- (104) Intransitive closed root, thematic object *a*: *a-S-CL[-D, Ø]-ġwáal'* “S fart (loudly)”
- a. third singular subject, imperfective
aġwáal'
a-Ø-Ø-Ø-ġwáal'
3O-ZCNJ-3S-CL[-D, Ø, -I]-fart
“he farts; he is farting”
 - b. third singular subject, imperfective negative
tléil oogwáal'
tléil a-u-Ø-Ø-Ø-ġwáal'
NEG 3O-IRR-ZCNJ-3S-CL[-D, Ø, -I]-fart
“he does not fart; he is not farting”
 - c. third singular subject, perfective
aawaġwál'
a-ÿu-Ø-ÿa-ġwál'
3O-PFV-3S-CL[-D, Ø, +I]-fart
“he farted; he has farted”
 - d. third singular subject, perfective negative
awuġwáal'
a-u-ÿu-Ø-Ø-ġwáal'
3O-IRR-PFV-3S-CL[-D, Ø, -I]-fart
“he did not fart; he has not farted”

- e. third singular subject, perfective habitual (simplex)
 ooḡwáal'ch
 a-u-θ-θ-θ-ḡwáal'-ch
 3O-IRR-ZCNJ-3S-CL[-D, θ, -I]-fart-HAB
 "he always farts; he farts all the time"
- f. third singular subject, perfective habitual (composite)
 aḡwáal' nooch
 a-u-θ-θ-θ-ḡwáal' nooch
 3O-IRR-ZCNJ-3S-CL[-D, θ, -I]-fart AUX.HAB
 "he always farts; he farts all the time"
- g. third singular subject, future
 akḡwaḡwáal'
 a-ga-u-ḡa-θ-θ-ḡwáal'
 3O-GCNJ-IRR-GCNJ-3S-CL[-D, θ, -I]-fart
 "he will fart"
- h. third singular subject, potential negative
 tléil aadé ooḡaaḡwaal'i yé
 tléil á-dé a-u-ḡa-θ-θ-ḡwáal'-yi yé
 NEG it-ALL 3O-IRR-GCNJ-3S-CL[-D, θ, -I]-fart-ATTR thus
 "no way can he fart"
- i. third singular subject, potential decessive
 ooḡaḡwáal'in
 a-u-ḡa-θ-θ-ḡwáal'-in
 3O-IRR-GCNJ-3S-CL[-D, θ, -I]-fart-DEC
 "he would have farted"

D.1. S cook O *O-S-CL[-D, s]-?ee*D.2. S eat O *O-S-CL[-D, s]-ḡaa*

<i>Imperfective</i>	<i>Imperfective Negative</i>
<i>χasa.ée</i>	tléil <i>uχsa.ee</i>
<i>θ-θ-χa-sa-?ée</i>	tléil <i>θ-u-θ-χa-sa-?ee</i>
3O-ZCNJ-1SG.S-CL[-D, s, -I]-cook “I cook it”	NEG 3O-IRR-ZCNJ-1SG.S-CL[-D, s, -I]-cook “I don’t cook it”
<i>tusa.ée</i>	tléil <i>tusa.ee</i>
<i>θ-θ-tu-sa-?ée</i>	tléil <i>θ-u-θ-tu-sa-?ee</i>
3O-ZCNJ-1PL.S-CL[-D, s, -I]-cook “we cook it”	NEG 3O-IRR-ZCNJ-1PL.S-CL[-D, s, -I]-cook “we don’t cook it”
<i>isa.ée</i>	tléil <i>isa.ee</i>
<i>θ-θ-i-sa-?ée</i>	tléil <i>θ-u-θ-i-sa-?ee</i>
3O-ZCNJ-2SG.S-CL[-D, s, -I]-cook “you (sg.) cook it”	NEG 3O-IRR-ZCNJ-2SG.S-CL[-D, s, -I]-cook “you (sg.) don’t cook it”
<i>yisa.ée</i>	tléil <i>yisa.ee</i>
<i>θ-θ-yi-sa-?ée</i>	tléil <i>θ-u-θ-yi-sa-?ee</i>
3O-ZCNJ-2PL.S-CL[-D, s, -I]-cook “you (pl.) cook it”	NEG 3O-IRR-ZCNJ-2PL.S-CL[-D, s, -I]-cook “you (pl.) don’t cook it”
<i>as.ée</i>	tléil <i>oos.ee</i>
<i>a-θ-θ-sa-?ée</i>	tléil <i>θ-u-θ-θ-sa-?ee</i>
3O-ZCNJ-3S-CL[-D, s, -I]-cook “he cooks it”	NEG 3O-IRR-ZCNJ-3S-CL[-D, s, -I]-cook “he doesn’t cook it”
<i>has as.ée</i>	tléil <i>has oos.ee</i>
<i>has-a-θ-θ-sa-?ée</i>	tléil <i>has-θ-u-θ-θ-sa-?ee</i>
PL-3O-ZCNJ-3S-CL[-D, s, -I]-cook “they cook it”	NEG PL-3O-IRR-ZCNJ-3S-CL[-D, s, -I]-cook “they don’t cook it”
<i>dus.ée</i>	tléil <i>dus.ee</i>
<i>θ-θ-du-s-?ée</i>	tléil <i>θ-u-θ-du-s-?ee</i>
3O-ZCNJ-INDH.S-CL[+D, s, -I]-cook “people cook it; it is cooked”	NEG 3O-IRR-ZCNJ-INDH.S-CL[+D, s, -I]-cook “people don’t cook it; it isn’t cooked”

Table D.1: Imperfective paradigm of 3O-S-CL[-D, s]-*?ee* “S cook 3rd O”

<i>Imperfective Decessive</i>	<i>Imperfective Decessive Negative</i>
<i>xasa.eeyín</i> 0-0- <i>xá</i> -sa- <i>ʔee-ín</i> 3O-ZCNJ-1SG.S-CL[-D, s, -I]-cook-DEC “I used to cook it”	<i>tléil uxsa.eeyín</i> <i>tléil</i> 0-u-0- <i>xá</i> -sa- <i>ʔee-ín</i> NEG 3O-IRR-ZCNJ-1SG.S-CL[-D, s, -I]-cook-DEC “I didn’t used to cook it”
<i>tusa.eeyín</i> 0-0-tu-sa- <i>ʔee-ín</i> 3O-ZCNJ-1PL.S-CL[-D, s, -I]-cook -DEC “we used to cook it”	<i>tléil tusa.eeyín</i> <i>tléil</i> 0-u-0-tu-sa- <i>ʔee-ín</i> NEG 3O-IRR-ZCNJ-1PL.S-CL[-D, s, -I]-cook-DEC “we didn’t used to cook it”
<i>isa.eeyín</i> 0-0-i-sa- <i>ʔée</i> 3O-ZCNJ-2SG.S-CL[-D, s, -I]-cook-DEC “you (sg.) used to cook it”	<i>tléil isa.eeyín</i> <i>tléil</i> 0-u-0-i-sa- <i>ʔee-ín</i> NEG 3O-IRR-ZCNJ-2SG.S-CL[-D, s, -I]-cook-DEC “you (sg.) didn’t used to cook it”
<i>yisa.eeyín</i> 0-0-yi-sa- <i>ʔée</i> 3O-ZCNJ-2PL.S-CL[-D, s, -I]-cook -DEC “you (pl.) used to cook it”	<i>tléil yisa.eeyín</i> <i>tléil</i> 0-u-0-yi-sa- <i>ʔee</i> NEG 3O-IRR-ZCNJ-2PL.S-CL[-D, s, -I]-cook-DEC “you (pl.) didn’t used to cook it”
<i>as.eeyín</i> a-0-0-sa- <i>ʔee-ín</i> 3O-ZCNJ-3S-CL[-D, s, -I]-cook-DEC “he used to cook it”	<i>tléil as.eeyín</i> <i>tléil</i> a-u-0-0-sa- <i>ʔee-ín</i> NEG 3O-IRR-ZCNJ-3S-CL[-D, s, -I]-cook-DEC “he didn’t used to cook it”
<i>has as.eeyín</i> has-a-0-0-sa- <i>ʔée</i> PL-3O-ZCNJ-3S-CL[-D, s, -I]-cook-DEC “they used to cook it”	<i>tléil has as.eeyín</i> <i>tléil</i> has-0-u-0-0-sa- <i>ʔee</i> NEG PL-3O-IRR-ZCNJ-3S-CL[-D, s, -I]-cook-DEC “they didn’t used to cook it”
<i>dus.eeyín</i> 0-0-du-s- <i>ʔée</i> 3O-ZCNJ-INDH.S-CL[+D, s, -I]-cook-DEC “people used to cook it; it used to be cooked	<i>tléil dus.eeyín</i> <i>tléil</i> 0-u-0-du-s- <i>ʔee</i> NEG 3O-IRR-ZCNJ-INDH.S-CL[+D, s, -I]-cook-DEC “people didn’t used to cook it; it didn’t used to be cooked”

Table D.2: Imperfective decessive paradigm of 3O-S-CL[-D, s]-*ʔee* “S cook 3rd O”

<i>Perfective</i>	<i>Perfective Negative</i>
<i>xwasi.ée</i> <i>∅-ÿu-xa-si-?ée</i> 3O-PFV-1SG.S-CL[-D, s, +I]-cook “I cooked it; I have cooked it”	<i>tléil xwasa.í</i> <i>tléil ∅-u-ÿu-xa-sa-?ee</i> NEG 3O-IRR-PFV-1SG.S-CL[-D, s, -I]-cook “I didn’t cook it; I haven’t cooked it”
<i>wutusi.ée</i> <i>∅-ÿu-tu-si-?ée</i> 3O-PFV-1PL.S-CL[-D, s, +I]-cook “we cooked it; we have cooked it”	<i>tléil wutusa.í</i> <i>tléil ∅-u-ÿu-tu-sa-?ee</i> NEG 3O-IRR-PFV-1PL.S-CL[-D, s, -I]-cook “we didn’t cook it; we haven’t”
<i>yisi.ée</i> <i>∅-ÿu-i-si-?ée</i> 3O-PFV-2SG.S-CL[-D, s, +I]-cook “you (sg.) cooked it; have cooked it”	<i>tléil yisa.í</i> <i>tléil ∅-u-ÿu-i-sa-?ee</i> NEG 3O-IRR-PFV-2SG.S-CL[-D, s, -I]-cook “you (sg.) didn’t cook it; you haven’t”
<i>yeeyisi.ée</i> <i>∅-ÿu-yi-si-?ée</i> 3O-PFV-2PL.S-CL[-D, s, +I]-cook “you (pl.) cooked it; have cooked it”	<i>tléil yeeyisa.í</i> <i>tléil ∅-u-ÿu-yi-sa-?ee</i> NEG 3O-IRR-PFV-2PL.S-CL[-D, s, -I]-cook “you (pl.) didn’t cook it; you haven’t”
<i>awsi.ée</i> <i>a-ÿu-∅-si-?ée</i> 3O-PFV-3S-CL[-D, s, +I]-cook “he cooked it; he has cooked it”	<i>tléil awus.í</i> <i>tléil ∅-u-ÿu-∅-sa-?ee</i> NEG 3O-IRR-PFV-3S-CL[-D, s, -I]-cook “he didn’t cook it; he hasn’t cooked it”
<i>has awsi.ée</i> <i>has-a-ÿu-∅-si-?ée</i> PL-3O-PFV-3S-CL[-D, s, +I]-cook “they cooked it; they have cooked it”	<i>tléil has awus.í</i> <i>tléil has-∅-u-ÿu-∅-sa-?ee</i> NEG PL-3O-IRR-PFV-3S-CL[-D, s, -I]-cook “they didn’t cook it; they haven’t”
<i>wududzi.ée</i> <i>∅-ÿu-du-si-?ée</i> 3O-PFV-INDH.S-CL[-D, s, +I]-cook “people cooked it; it was cooked”	<i>tléil wudus.í</i> <i>tléil ∅-u-ÿu-du-sa-?ee</i> NEG 3O-IRR-PFV-INDH.S-CL[-D, s, -I]-cook “people didn’t cook it; it wasn’t cooked”

Table D.3: Perfective paradigm of 3O-S-CL[-D, s]-*?ee* “S cook 3rd O”

<i>Perfective Habitual</i>	<i>Perfective Habitual Negative</i>
<i>x</i> wasa.éeych \emptyset - <i>ÿu-xa-sa-ʔée-y-ch</i> 3O-PFV-1SG.S-CL[-D, s, -I]-cook- -VAR-HAB	tléil <i>x</i> wasa.éeych tléil \emptyset -u- <i>ÿu-xa-sa-ʔée-y-ch</i> NEG 3O-IRR-PFV-1SG.S-CL[-D, s, -I]-cook- -VAR-HAB
“I always cook it”	“I never cook it”
tusa.éeych \emptyset - <i>ÿu-tu-sa-ʔée-y-ch</i> 3O-PFV-1PL.S-CL[-D, s, -I]-cook- -VAR-HAB	tléil tusa.éeych tléil \emptyset -u- <i>ÿu-tu-sa-ʔée-y-ch</i> NEG 3O-IRR-PFV-1PL.S-CL[-D, s, -I]-cook- -VAR-HAB
“we always cook it”	“we never cook it”
isa.éeych \emptyset - <i>ÿu-i-sa-ʔée-y-ch</i> 3O-PFV-2SG.S-CL[-D, s, -I]-cook- -VAR-HAB	tléil isa.éeych tléil \emptyset -u- <i>ÿu-i-sa-ʔée-y-ch</i> NEG 3O-IRR-PFV-2SG.S-CL[-D, s, -I]-cook- -VAR-HAB
“you (sg.) always cook it”	“you (sg.) never cook it”
yisa.éeych \emptyset - <i>ÿu-yi-sa-ʔée-y-ch</i> 3O-PFV-2PL.S-CL[-D, s, -I]-cook- -VAR-HAB	tléil yisa.éeych tléil \emptyset -u- <i>ÿu-yi-sa-ʔée-y-ch</i> NEG 3O-IRR-PFV-2PL.S-CL[-D, s, -I]-cook- -VAR-HAB
“you (pl.) always cook it”	“you (pl.) never cook it”
oos.éeych a- <i>ÿu-\emptyset-sa-ʔée-y-ch</i> 3O-PFV-3S-CL[-D, s, -I]-cook- -VAR-HAB	tléil oos.éeych tléil \emptyset -u- <i>ÿu-\emptyset-sa-ʔée-y-ch</i> NEG 3O-IRR-PFV-3S-CL[-D, s, -I]-cook- -VAR-HAB
“he always cooks it”	“he never cooks it”
has oos.éeych has-a- <i>ÿu-\emptyset-sa-ʔée-y-ch</i> PL-3O-PFV-3S-CL[-D, s, -I]-cook- -VAR-HAB	tléil has oos.éeych tléil has- \emptyset -u- <i>ÿu-\emptyset-sa-ʔée-y-ch</i> NEG PL-3O-IRR-PFV-3S-CL[-D, s, -I]-cook- -VAR-HAB
“they always cook it”	“they never cook it”
dus.éeych \emptyset - <i>ÿu-du-s-ʔée-y-ch</i> 3O-PFV-INDH.S-CL[+D, s, -I]-cook- -VAR-HAB	tléil dus.éeych tléil \emptyset -u- <i>ÿu-du-s-ʔée-y-ch</i> NEG 3O-IRR-PFV-INDH.S-CL[+D, s, -I]-cook- -VAR-HAB
“people always cook it; it is never ...”	“people never cook it; it is always ...”

Table D.4: Perfective habitual paradigm of 3O-S-CL[-D, s]-*ʔee* “S cook 3rd O”

<i>Future</i>	<i>Future Negative</i>
kukasa.ée \emptyset -ga-u- \bar{g} a- \bar{x} a-sa- $\bar{?}$ ée 3O-GCNJ-IRR-GCNJ-1SG.S-CL[-D, s, -I]-cook “I will cook it”	tléil uxsa.ee tléil \emptyset -u- \emptyset - \bar{x} a-sa- $\bar{?}$ ee NEG 3O-IRR-ZCNJ-1SG.S-CL[-D, s, -I]-cook “I don’t cook it”
gaxtusa.ée \emptyset -ga-u- \bar{g} a-tu-sa- $\bar{?}$ ée 3O-GCNJ-IRR-GCNJ-1PL.S-CL[-D, s, -I]-cook “we will cook it”	tléil tusa.ee tléil \emptyset -u- \emptyset -tu-sa- $\bar{?}$ ee NEG 3O-IRR-ZCNJ-1PL.S-CL[-D, s, -I]-cook “we don’t cook it”
gaḡisa.ée \emptyset -ga-u- \bar{g} a-i-sa- $\bar{?}$ ée 3O-GCNJ-IRR-GCNJ-2SG.S-CL[-D, s, -I]-cook “you (sg.) will cook it”	tléil isa.ee tléil \emptyset -u- \emptyset -i-sa- $\bar{?}$ ee NEG 3O-IRR-ZCNJ-2SG.S-CL[-D, s, -I]-cook “you (sg.) don’t cook it”
gax̣yisa.ée \emptyset -ga-u- \bar{g} a-yi-sa- $\bar{?}$ ée 3O-GCNJ-IRR-GCNJ-2PL.S-CL[-D, s, -I]-cook “you (pl.) will cook it”	tléil yisa.ee tléil \emptyset -u- \emptyset -yi-sa- $\bar{?}$ ee NEG 3O-IRR-ZCNJ-2PL.S-CL[-D, s, -I]-cook “you (pl.) don’t cook it”
agu \bar{x} sa.ée a-ga-u- \bar{g} a- \emptyset -sa- $\bar{?}$ ée 3O-GCNJ-IRR-GCNJ-3S-CL[-D, s, -I]-cook “he will cook it”	tléil oos.ee tléil \emptyset -u- \emptyset - \emptyset -sa- $\bar{?}$ ee NEG 3O-IRR-ZCNJ-3S-CL[-D, s, -I]-cook “he doesn’t cook it”
has agu \bar{x} sa.ée has-a-ga-u- \bar{g} a- \emptyset -sa- $\bar{?}$ ée PL-3O-GCNJ-IRR-GCNJ-3S-CL[-D, s, -I]-cook “they will cook it”	tléil has oos.ee tléil has- \emptyset -u- \emptyset - \emptyset -sa- $\bar{?}$ ee NEG PL-3O-IRR-ZCNJ-3S-CL[-D, s, -I]-cook “they don’t cook it”
ga \bar{x} du \bar{s} .ée \emptyset -ga-u- \bar{g} a-du-s- $\bar{?}$ ée 3O-GCNJ-IRR-GCNJ-INDH.S-CL[+D, s, -I]-cook “people will cook it; it will be cooked”	tléil dus.ee tléil \emptyset -u- \emptyset -du-s- $\bar{?}$ ee NEG 3O-IRR-ZCNJ-INDH.S-CL[+D, s, -I]-cook “people don’t cook it; it isn’t cooked”

Table D.5: Future paradigm of *3O-S-CL[-D, s]- $\bar{?}$ ee* “S cook 3rd O”

<i>Imperative</i>	<i>Perfective Prohibitive</i>
sa.í ∅-∅-∅- <i>sa-ʔí</i> 3O-ZCNJ-2SG.S-CL[-D, s, -I]-cook “(you (sg.)) cook it!”	líl yisa.eeyík lí-l ∅-u- <i>ʔu-i-sa-ʔee-ík</i> PHIB-NEG 3O-IRR-PFV-2SG.S-CL[-D, s, -I]-cook-OPT “(you (sg.)) don’t cook it!”
yisa.í ∅-∅- <i>yi-sa-ʔí</i> 3O-ZCNJ-2PL.S-CL[-D, s, -I]-cook “(you (pl.)) cook it!”	líl yeeyisa.eeyík lí-l ∅-u- <i>ʔu-yi-sa-ʔee-ík</i> PHIB-NEG 3O-IRR-PFV-2PL.S-CL[-D, s, -I]-cook-OPT “(you (pl.)) don’t cook it!”
<i>Hortative</i>	<i>Hortative Negative</i>
kasa.ee ∅- <i>ḡa-χa-sa-ʔee</i> 3O-ḠCNJ-1SG.S-CL[-D, s, -I]-cook “let me cook it”	
ḡatusa.ee ∅- <i>ḡa-tu-sa-ʔee</i> 3O-ḠCNJ-1PL.S-CL[-D, s, -I]-cook “let’s cook it”	
aχsa.ee a- <i>ḡa-∅-sa-ʔee</i> 3O-ḠCNJ-3S-CL[-D, s, -I]-cook “let him cook it”	
has aχsa.ee has-a- <i>ḡa-∅-sa-ʔee</i> PL-3O-ḠCNJ-3S-CL[-D, s, -I]-cook “let them cook it”	

Table D.6: Miscellaneous paradigms of 3O-S-CL[-D, s]-*ʔee* “S cook 3rd O”

<i>Potential</i>	<i>Potential Negative</i>
------------------	---------------------------

Table D.7: Potential paradigms of 3O-S-CL[-D, s]-*ʔee* “S cook 3rd O”

<i>Imperfective</i>	<i>Imperfective Negative</i>
$\underline{xaxá}$	tléil $\underline{xwaxá}$
$\emptyset-\emptyset-\underline{xa}-\emptyset-\underline{xá}$	tléil $\emptyset-u-\emptyset-\underline{xa}-\emptyset-\underline{xá}$
3O-ZCNJ-1SG.S-CL[-D, \emptyset , -I]-eat “I eat it; I’m eating it”	NEG 3O-IRR-ZCNJ-1SG.S-CL[-D, s, -I]-eat “I don’t eat it; I’m not eating it”

Table D.8: Imperfective paradigm of *3O-S-CL[-D, \emptyset]-xaa* “S eat 3rd O”

E. Abbreviations

[[This list of abbreviations is handmade. It should be replaced with an automatic one.]] [[Need references to the sections where each abbreviation is discussed.]]

1, 2, 3	person
ABS	absolutive case, object of transitive verb
ALB	alienable noun
ALL	allative, “to, toward”
ALT	alternative, “back and forth”
AREAL	areal, “space, environment, weather, extent”
ASP	unspecified aspect
ATTR	attributive
AUX	auxiliary
BASE	meaningless base for pronominal attachment
cf.	compare
CL	classifier: voice, valency, realis, noun class, thematic
±D	D component: +D middle voice or thematic; -D non-middle
S	S component: { <i>∅</i> , <i>s</i> , <i>l</i> , <i>sh</i> }; valency, noun class, thematic
±I	I component: +I realis; -I irrealis
COND	conditional, “if, when”
CNJ	unspecified conjugation/aspect
CTNG	contingent, “if ever, whenever”
DEC	decessive
DEM	demonstrative
DIM	diminutive
DIST	distal, far from speaker and listener
DSTRB	distributive
Eng.	English
ERG	ergative case, subject of transitive verb
FOC	focus
FREQ	frequentative aspect

FUT	future tense
GCNJ	<i>ga</i> -conjugation/aspect
ḠCNJ	<i>ḡa</i> -conjugation/aspect
H	human
HAB	habitual aspect
HSFC	horizontal surface, “top, flat, surface”
INAL	inalienable noun
INDH	indefinite human, “somebody”
INDN	indefinite nonhuman, “something”
INSTR	instrumental(-comitative) case, “with, using, accompanying”
IRR	irrealis
L1	first language
L2	second (or other) language
LOC	locative, “at, in, by, on”
MDST	mesiodistal, nearer to listener
MPRX	mesioproximal, nearer to speaker
N	nonhuman
NCNJ	<i>na</i> -conjugation/aspect
NEG	negative
O	object
OBV	obviate discourse argument
OPT	optative mood
PA	Proto-Athabaskan
PAE	Proto-Athabaskan-Eyak
PAET	Proto-Athabaskan-Eyak-Tlingit, a.k.a. Proto-Na-Dene (PND)
PFV	perfective aspect
PERL	perlative case, “through, along, across”
PERT	pertingent case, “at, in contact with, having the form of, member of”
PL	plural
PNCT	punctual case, “at/to a point”
PND	Proto-Na-Dene, a.k.a. Proto-Athabaskan-Eyak-Tlingit (PAET)
PROG	progressive aspect
PROX	proximal, closest to speaker
PRX	proximate discourse argument
PSS	possessive pronoun or possessed suffix
Q	wh-question
QUAL	qualifier
RECIP	reciprocal

E. Abbreviations

REP	repetitive aspect
REV	reversive, “back, backwards”
RFLX	reflexive
S	subject
SBEN	self-benefactive
SER	serial aspect
SIM	similative, “like, as, similar to, equivalent with”
SG	singular
TERM	terminative, “cease, end, coming to a point”
VAR	stem variation
VSFC	vertical surface, “side, face, flat”
YN	yes/no question
ZCNJ	\emptyset -conjugation/aspect

F. Symbols

The symbols in table F.1 appear throughout this document attached to many different kinds of linguistic data. Preceding example sentences, they indicate the grammaticality of the sentence in relation to native speaker judgements. Preceding phonemes and words, they indicate the phonemic or historical status of the item. As such, they are often referred to as “stigmata” in the linguistic literature, a term which unfortunately collides with Leer’s (191) “syllable nucleus stigmata” which are the four vowel modifications used in Tongass Tlingit and in historical reconstructions of Pre-Tlingit and Proto-Na-Dene. Instead of referring to the items in table F.1 as stigmata, they will be simply termed “symbols” herein. The two subgroups in the table are defined by their contexts of use, with the grammaticality symbols used to indicate grammatical or phonological status of a given exemplar, and the phonemicity symbols used to indicate the phonemic status of exemplary sounds and words.

In grammatical examples, the symbol * (called “star”) indicates that an example is ungrammatical, and the symbol ? (called “question”) indicates that the example is questionably grammatical or otherwise grammatically peculiar. The following English examples demonstrate this usage.

- (105) a. There is a pair of pants on the floor.
b. ?There are a pair of pants on the floor.
c. *There are the pair of pants on the floor.

The symbol % (called “percent”) indicates that a given example is not elicited from a native speaker, but is instead extrapolated from existing data to form a *probably* grammatical sentence. The following Japanese examples demonstrate this function.

	<i>Sym.</i>	<i>Meaning</i>
grammaticality	*	ungrammatical
	?	questionable, peculiar, unknown
	%	not elicited from a native speaker, extrapolated
	!	irregular, remarkable, but still grammatical
	√	underlying or root form, not spoken
phonemicity	*	reconstructed, not historically attested
	†	dead, historically attested but no longer used
	?	questionable, marginal
	%	dialectal

Table F.1: List of grammaticality and phonemicity symbols.

- (106) a. Hawai ga daisuki.
 Hawai'i NOM love
 "I love Hawai'i"
- b. %Arasuka ga daisuki.
 Alaska NOM love
 "I love Alaska"

The symbol ! (called "bang"), which is only rarely used in this grammar, indicates a form that is expected to be ungrammatical but is nonetheless accepted and/or produced by native speakers such that it seems to be grammatical. Thus this symbol marks irregular forms where they are not adequately explained. This symbol should not be confused with the ordinary exclamation mark used at the end of utterances to indicate exclamatory forms such as anger, surprise, imperatives, and so forth.

- (107) *na-S-CL[-D, ∅]-goot* "S (sg.) go (by foot)"
- a. yaa nagút
 ÿaa=na-∅-∅-gút
 along=NCNJ-3SG.S-CL[-D, ∅, -I]-go.SG
 "he is going along"

- b. !gúk!
 0-0-0-gúk
 ZCNJ-2SG.S-CL[-D, 0, -I]-go.SG
 “go!” (imperative)”

The grammaticality symbols *, ?, %, and ! can all be used in phonological contexts as well. The following examples illustrate their use in discussing [[a phonological issue]].

[[insert illuminating phonology example here]]

The √ symbol (called “root”) is used to indicate that a given form is an underlying root rather than a noun, an important distinction given that nouns and roots often have similar shapes. For example, the Tlingit root √*t'eex'* is a root which indicates ice, hardness, and solidity, and it appears in a number of verb themes such as *O-0-CL[-D, 0]-t'eex'* “O be difficult, hard”, *O-ka-0-CL[-D, 0]-t'eex'* “O harden, cake together”, and *O-0-S-CL[-D, l]-t'eex'* “S freeze O, turn O to ice”. But the root √*t'eex'* is also associated with the noun *t'éex'*, which differs from the root only in tone since roots are usually unspecified for tone. Here tone is distinctive, but for nouns with low tone the corresponding root may appear to be equal. To make the distinction clear, the symbol √ is used before roots to indicate their special status.

Discussion of sounds and phonemicity involves a different set of distinctions which uses some of the same symbols. Historical linguistics has a long tradition of using * to indicate sounds and etyma which are reconstructed and not historically attested in any spoken language. Thus the Proto-Indo-European (PIE) reconstruction **póds* has the Proto-Germanic (PGmc) reflex **fōtuz*, giving Gothic ƱƱƱƱ *fotus* and Modern English *foot*. These show the historical change of PIE **p* to PGmc **f* and thence to Gothic Ʊ *f* and English *f*.

The symbol * also has another use, indicating that sounds are not phonemic or allophonic. This is similar to its use in grammatical and phonological contexts. Thus one might say that the sound *[b] does not exist in Tlingit and hence a form *[bʌ.tə] from English /bʌ.tə/ [bʌ.tɪ] must become [kʷʌ.tə] in Tlingit, phonemically /kʷʌ.ta/.

Sounds which are demonstrably extinct are rare among languages, usually occurring only in those languages that have an extensive literary tradition which records phonemes explicitly. Tlingit is a bit unique in this respect, since we have recordings of speakers who had a phoneme †/ɥ/ but this sound is lost today. The use of † (called “dagger” or “cross”) to indicate extinct sounds is un-

common, but should be relatively transparent from its similar uses in biology to indicate extinct species and in genealogy to indicate deceased individuals.

Questionable or marginal sounds are indicated using [?] which is superscripted and thus different from ? used to indicate questionable grammatical or phonological forms. The meaning is roughly similar, thus [?]/l/ can be said to have questionable status in Tlingit as an independent phoneme, as it appears only in a few Athabaskan borrowings in the Interior dialect and is otherwise regularly replaced by /n/.

The symbol % indicates sounds that are dialectally restricted in distribution. The labial nasal [%]/m/ is one such sound, found only in the Interior dialects in certain morphophonological environments as well as in the word [%]/mã:/ which is otherwise /wa:/ in Tlingit. The distinction between questionable/marginal and dialectal is one of degree, explained for each particular exemplar.

G. *Glossary*

[[Make this automatic.]]

Citation Abbreviations

- A69 ANONYMOUS. 1969. *Dikée Ankáwoo doo Yéet dàt John-ch kawshixidee Yoox'utúnk: The gospel of John in the Tlingit language.*
- B17 BOAS, FRANZ. 1917. *Grammatical notes on the language of the Tlingit Indians.*
- DD02 DAUENHAUER, NORA MARKS & DAUENHAUER, RICHARD. 2002. *Lingít X'éináx Sá! Say it in Tlingit: A Tlingit phrasebook.*
- DD87 — 1987. *Haa shuká, our ancestors: Tlingit oral narratives.*
- DDB08 DAUENHAUER, NORA MARKS; DAUENHAUER, RICHARD; & BLACK, LYDIA (eds.). 2008. *Anóoshi Lingít Aaní ká: Russians in Tlingit America – the battles of Sitka, 1802 and 1804.*
- L91 LEER, JEFF. 1991. *The schetic categories of the Tlingit verb.*
- LHR01 LEER, JEFF; HITCH, DOUG; & RITTER, JOHN. 2001. *Interior Tlingit noun dictionary: The dialects spoken by Tlingit elders of Carcross and Teslin, Yukon, and Atlin, British Columbia.*
- N66 NAISH, CONSTANCE M. 1966. *A syntactic study of Tlingit.*
- NS73 STORY, GILLIAN L. & NAISH, CONSTANCE M. 1973. *Tlingit verb dictionary.*
- NSDL76 NAISH, CONSTANCE M. et al. 1976. *Tlingit noun dictionary.*
- S11 SWANTON, JOHN R. 1911. “Tlingit”.
- S15 SHOTRIDGE, LOUIS. 1915. *Notebook of Tlingit language notes, songs, & articles for Museum Journal, including work with Boas.*
- S66 STORY, GILLIAN L. 1966. *A morphological study of Tlingit.*
- S72 — 1972. “A sample grammar of Tlingit”.
- V39 VELTEN, HENRY. 1939. “Two southern Tlingit tales”.
- V44 — 1944. “Three Tlingit stories”.
- WWL78 WILLIAMS, FRANK; WILLIAMS, EMMA; & LEER, JEFF. 1978. *Tongass Texts.*

Bibliography

- ANONYMOUS. 1969. *Dikée Ankáwoo doo Yéet dàt John-ch kawshixidee Yoox'utúnk: The gospel of John in the Tlingit language*. Trans. by Constance M. Naish & Gillian L. Story. Santa Ana, CA: Wycliffe Bible Translators.
- BOAS, FRANZ. 1891. "Vocabularies of the Tlingit, Haida and Tsimshian languages". *Proceedings of the American Philosophical Society* 29(136): 173–208.
- 1916. *Vocabularies from the Northwest coast of America*. Worcester, MA: American Ethnological Society.
- 1917. *Grammatical notes on the language of the Tlingit Indians*. (University Museum Anthropological Publications 8.1). Philadelphia: University of Pennsylvania.
- BUSCHMANN, JOHANN KARL EDUARD. 1857. *Die Pima-Sprache und die Sprache der Koloschen*. Berlin: Druckerei der Königlich Akademie der Wissenschaften.
- CABLE, SETH. 2005. *Free relatives in Tlingit and Haida: Evidence that the mover projects*. Manuscript.
- 2006a. *Question particles and the nature of wh-fronting*. Manuscript.
- 2006b. *The interrogative words of Tlingit: An informal grammatical study*. Manuscript.
- 2007. *The grammar of Q: Q-particles and the nature of wh-fronting as revealed by the wh-questions of Tlingit*. Cambridge, MA: Massachusetts Institute of Technology PhD dissertation.
- 2009. "Covert A-scrambling in Tlingit". In Christodoulou, Christiana & Lyon, John M. (eds.), *Papers for the 43rd international conference on Salish and neighboring languages*, pp. 22–53. (University of British Columbia Working Papers in Linguistics vol. 23). Vancouver: University of British Columbia.
- COOK, EUNG-DO. 1986. "Athapaskan classificatory verbs". *Amerindia* 11: 11–24.
- COOK, EUNG-DO & RICE, KEREN (eds.). 1989. *Athapaskan linguistics: Current perspectives on a language family*. (Trends in Linguistics: State-of-the-Art Reports 15). Berlin: Mouton de Gruyter. ISBN 0-89925-282-6.
- DAUENHAUER, NORA MARKS & DAUENHAUER, RICHARD. 1987. *Haa shuká, our ancestors: Tlingit oral narratives*. (Classics of Tlingit oral literature 1). Seattle: University of Washington Press. ISBN 0-295-96495-2.

- DAUENHAUER, NORA MARKS & DAUENHAUER, RICHARD. 2000. *Beginning Tlingit*. Juneau, AK: Sealaska Heritage Foundation. ISBN 0-9679311-1-8.
- 2002. *Lingít X'éináx Sá! Say it in Tlingit: A Tlingit phrasebook*. Juneau, AK: Sealaska Heritage Institute. ISBN 0-9679311-1-8.
- DAUENHAUER, NORA MARKS; DAUENHAUER, RICHARD; & BLACK, LYDIA (eds.). 2008. *Anóoshi Lingít Aaní ká: Russians in Tlingit America – the battles of Sitka, 1802 and 1804*. (Classics of Tlingit oral literature 4). Seattle: University of Washington Press. ISBN 978-0-295-96801-2.
- DAVYDOV, GAVRIIL IVANOVICH. 1810. *Двукратное путешествие въ Америку морскихъ офицеровъ Хвостова и Давыдова, писанное симъ послѣденимъ*. Copy available at the Bancroft Library, Berkeley, CA. St. Petersburg: Морская Типографія.
- DE LA GRASSERIE, RAOUL. 1902. *Cinq langues de la Colombie Britannique: Haïda, Tshimshian, Kwagiutl, Nootka et Tlinkit*. (Bibliothèque Linguistique Américaine 24). Paris: J. Maisonneuve.
- DE LAGUNA, FEDERICA. 1960. *The story of a Tlingit community: A problem in the relationship between archaeological, ethnological, and historical methods*. (Smithsonian Institution Bureau of American Ethnology Bulletins 172). Washington, DC: U. S. Government Printing Office.
- 1972. *Under Mount Saint Elias: The History and Culture of the Yakutat Tlingit*. (Smithsonian Contributions to Anthropology 7 (in three parts)). Washington, DC: Smithsonian Institution Press.
- DURLACH, THERESA MAYER. 1928. *The relationship systems of the Tlingit, Haida and Tsimshian*. Ed. by Franz Boas. (Publications of the American Ethnological Society 11). New York: American Ethnological Society.
- EMMONS, GEORGE THORNTON. 1991. *The Tlingit Indians*. (Anthropological papers of the American Museum of Natural History 70). Edited with additions by de Laguna, Frederica. New York: American Museum of Natural History. ISBN 0-295-97008-1.
- GODDARD, PLINY EARLE. 1920. “Has Tlingit a genetic relationship to Athapaskan?” *International Journal of American Linguistics* 1(4): 266–279.
- HOIJER, HARRY. 1966. “Galice Athapaskan: A Grammatical Sketch”. *International Journal of American Linguistics* 32(4): 320–327.
- HOPE III, ANDREW; METCALFE, PETER; KRAFT, SUE; & JACKSON, MIKE. 2003. *The traditional Tlingit map and tribal list*. 4th edn. Juneau, AK: Tlingit Readers, Inc.
- JETTÉ, JULES & JONES, ELIZA. 2000. *Koyukon Athabaskan dictionary*. Ed. by James Kari. Fairbanks, AK: Alaska Native Language Center. ISBN 1-55500-063-0.
- JONES, LIVINGSTON F. 1914. *A study of the Thlingets of Alaska*. New York: Fleming H. Revell Co.
- KAMENSKII, ANATOLII. 1985. *Tlingit Indians of Alaska*. Trans. from the Russian and comm., with an introd., by Sergei Kan. (The Rasmuson Library Historical Translation Series 2). Fairbanks, Alaska: University of Alaska Press. ISBN 0-912006-18-8.

- KAN, SERGEL. 1989. *Symbolic Immortality: The Tlingit Potlatch of the Nineteenth Century*. (Smithsonian Series in Ethnographic Inquiry). Washington, D.C.: Smithsonian Institution Press. ISBN 1-56098-309-4.
- KARI, JAMES. 1985. "A note on Athapaskan directionals". *International Journal of American Linguistics* 51(4): 471-473.
- KELLY, WILLIAM A. & WILLARD, FRANCES H. 1905. "Grammar and vocabulary of the Hlingit language of Southeastern Alaska". In: *Report of the Commissioner of Education*. Vol. 1. Annual reports of the Department of the Interior for the fiscal year ended June 30, 1904. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, ch. 10, pp. 715-766.
- KRAUSE, AUREL. 1885. *Die Tlinkit-Indianer: Ergebnisse einer Reise nach der Nordwestküste von Amerika und der Beringstraße ausgeführt im Austrage der Bremer Geographischen Gesellschaft in den Jahren 1880-1881 durch die Doctoren Arthur und Aurel Krause*. Jena: Hermann Costenoble.
- 1956. *The Tlingit Indians: Results of a trip to the Northwest Coast of America and the Bering Straits*. (American Ethnological Society Monographs 26). Translation by Erna Gunther of *Die Tlinkit-Indianer*, Jena, 1885. Seattle: University of Washington Press. ISBN 0-295-95075-7.
- 1993. *To the Chukchi Peninsula and to the Tlingit Indians, 1881/1882: Journals and letters by Aurel and Arthur Krause*. Trans. from the German by Margot Krause McCaffrey. (The Rasmuson Library Historical Translation Series 8). Fairbanks, AK: University of Alaska Press. ISBN 0-912006-66-8.
- KRAUSS, MICHAEL E. 1969. "On the classification in the Athapascan, Eyak, and the Tlingit verb". *International Journal of American Linguistics* 35(4): 53-83. Memoir 24, published as a supplement to vol. 35 no. 4.
- LA PÉROUSE JEAN-FRANÇOIS DE GALAUP, COMTE DE. 1798. *Voyage de La Pérouse, Autour du monde, pendant les années 1785, 1786, 1787, et 1788*. Ed. by M. L. A. Milet-Mureau. Paris: Plassan.
- 1799. *The voyage of La Pérouse round the world in the years 1785, 1786, 1787, and 1788, with the nautical tables*. Ed. by M. L. A. Milet-Mureau. Picadilly: John Stockdale.
- LATHAM, R. G. 1848. "On the languages of the Oregon Territory". *Journal of the Ethnological Society of London* 1: 154-166.
- LEER, JEFF. 1989. "Directional systems in Athapaskan and Na-Dene". In Cook, Eung-Do & Rice, Keren (eds.), *Athapaskan linguistics: Current perspectives on a language family*, ch. 15, pp. 575-622. (Trends in Linguistics: State-of-the-Art Reports vol. 15). Berlin: Mouton de Gruyter. ISBN 0-89925-282-6.
- 1990. "Tlingit: A portmanteau language family?" In Baldi, Philip (ed.), *Linguistic change and reconstruction methodology*, pp. 73-98. (Trends in linguistics: Studies and monographs vol. 45). Berlin: Mouton de Gruyter. ISBN 0-89925-546-9.

- LEER, JEFF. 1991. *The schetic categories of the Tlingit verb*. Chicago: University of Chicago PhD dissertation.
- 2008. *Recent advances in AET comparison*. Manuscript.
- LEER, JEFF; HITCH, DOUG; & RITTER, JOHN. 2001. *Interior Tlingit noun dictionary: The dialects spoken by Tlingit elders of Carcross and Teslin, Yukon, and Atlin, British Columbia*. Whitehorse, YT: Yukon Native Language Centre. ISBN 1-55242-227-5.
- MADDIESON, IAN; SMITH, CAROLINE L.; & BESSELL, NICOLA. 2001. “Aspects of the phonetics of Tlingit”. *Anthropological Linguistics* 43(2): 135–176.
- MILLER, RAY. 1930. “A strobophotographic analysis of a Tlingit Indian’s speech”. *International Journal of American Linguistics* 6(1): 47–68.
- MITHUN, MARIANNE. 1999. *The languages of Native North America*. (Cambridge Language Surveys). Cambridge: Cambridge University Press. ISBN 0-521-23228-7.
- MOORE, PATRICK J. 2002. *Point of view in Kaska historical narratives*. Bloomington, IN: Indiana University PhD dissertation.
- MÜLLER, FRIEDRICH. 1884. “Bemerkungen über das Verbum der koloschischen Sprache”. *Sitzungsberichte der Kaiserlichen Akademie der Wissenschaften* 106(2): 453–462.
- NADEZHGIN, IVAN. 1896. *Sbornik (selections) of church hymns and prayers*. Orig. *Сборникъ церковныхъ пѣснопѣний и молитвословій на колошинскомъ нарѣчїи*. Digital version by All Saints of North America Orthodox Church, 2005. San Francisco.
- NAISH, CONSTANCE M. 1966. *A syntactic study of Tlingit*. London: School of Oriental & African Languages, University of London Master’s thesis.
- NAISH, CONSTANCE M.; STORY, GILLIAN L.; DAVIS, HENRY; & LEER, JEFF. 1976. *Tlingit noun dictionary*. Sitka, AK: Sheldon Jackson College.
- OBERG, KALERVO. 1937. *The social economy of the Tlingit Indians*. Chicago: University of Chicago, Dept. of Anthropology PhD dissertation.
- 1973. *The social economy of the Tlingit Indians*. (American Ethnological Society Monographs 55). Seattle: University of Washington Press. ISBN 0-295-95735-2.
- OLSON, RONALD LEROY. 1967. *Social structure and social life of the Tlingit in Alaska*. (University of California Anthropological Records 26). Berkeley, California: University of California Press.
- RICE, KEREN. 2000. *Morpheme order and semantic scope*. (Cambridge Studies in Linguistics). Cambridge: Cambridge University Press. ISBN 0-521-58354-3.
- 2008. “On the evolution of activity incorporates in Athabaskan languages”. *Diachronica* 25(2): 262–297.
- 2009. *The Athabaskan language family*. Unpublished lecture materials for the Linguistics Society of America 2009 Institute.
- RICE, KEREN & HARGUS, SHARON. 1989. “Conjugation and mode in Athapaskan languages: Evidence for two positions”. In Cook, Eung-Do & Rice, Keren (eds.), *Athapaskan linguistics: Current perspectives on a language family*, ch. 7, pp. 265–316.

- (Trends in Linguistics: State-of-the-Art Reports vol. 15). Berlin: Mouton de Gruyter. ISBN 0-89925-282-6.
- SCHÄUFELE, STEVEN. 1991. "A note on the term 'scrambling'". *Natural Language & Linguistic Theory* 9(2): 365–368.
- SHOTRIDGE, LOUIS. 1915. *Notebook of Tlingit language notes, songs, & articles for Museum Journal, including work with Boas*. University of Pennsylvania Museum Archives, Louis Shotridge Collection. Container 1, folder 14.
- STORY, GILLIAN L. 1966. *A morphological study of Tlingit*. London: School of Oriental & African Languages, University of London Master's thesis.
- 1972. "A sample grammar of Tlingit". Second year collected notes 2. Summer Institute of Linguistics (GB).
- STORY, GILLIAN L. & NAISH, CONSTANCE M. 1973. *Tlingit verb dictionary*. Fairbanks, AK: Alaska Native Language Center. ISBN 0-933769-25-3.
- SWANTON, JOHN R. 1908. *Social condition, beliefs, and linguistic relationship of the Tlingit Indians*. Washington, DC: U.S. Government Printing Office.
- 1909. *Tlingit myths and texts*. (Bulletins of the Smithsonian Institution Bureau of American Ethnology 39). Washington, DC: U.S. Government Printing Office.
- 1911. "Tlingit". In Boas, Franz (ed.), *Handbook of American Indian languages*, pp. 159–204. Washington, DC: U.S. Government Printing Office.
- THOMPSON, CHAD. 1993. "The areal prefix *h-* in Koyukon Athapaskan". *International Journal of American Linguistics* 59(3): 315–333.
- VAJDA, EDWARD T. 2009. *A Siberian link with Na-Dene languages*. Manuscript. Presented at Athabaskan Languages Conference, July 2009, Berkeley.
- VELTEN, HENRY. 1939. "Two southern Tlingit tales". *International Journal of American Linguistics* 10(2/3): 65–74.
- 1944. "Three Tlingit stories". *International Journal of American Linguistics* 10(4): 168–180.
- VENIAMINOV, IVAN. 1846. *Observations about the Tlingit & Kodiak (Alutiiq) languages*. Orig. *Замѣчанія о колошенскомъ и кадьякскомъ языкахъ и отчасти о прочихъ російско-американскихъ, съ присовокупленіемъ російско-колошенскаго словаря, содержащаго болѣе 1000 словъ, изъ коихъ на нѣкоторыя сдѣланы поясненія*. Digital version by All Saints of North America Orthodox Church, 2007. St. Petersburg.
- 1901. *Indication of the pathway into the kingdom of Heaven*. Orig. *Указаніе пути въ царствіе небесное: Ка-вак-шіи ев-у-ту-ци-ни-и дте тики ан-ка-у хан-те*. Digital version by All Saints of North America Orthodox Church, 2005. Translated into Tlingit by S.I. Kostromitinov. Sitka, AK.
- WILHELM, ANDREA. 2008. "Bare nouns and number in Dëne Sųliné". *Natural Language Semantics* 16(1): 39–68.
- WILLIAMS, FRANK; WILLIAMS, EMMA; & LEER, JEFF. 1978. *Tongass Texts*. Fairbanks, AK: Alaska Native Language Center.

Bibliography

- WRANGELL, FERDINAND PETROVICH VON. 1839. *Statistische und ethnographische Nachrichten über die Russische Besitzungen an der Nordwestküste von Amerika*. (Beitrage zur Kenntniss des Russischen Reiches I). St. Petersburg: Kaiserlichen Akademie der Wissenschaften.
- YOUNG, ROBERT W. 1995. *Navajo verb morphology: An overview*. Manuscript.
- YOUNG, ROBERT W. & MORGAN, WILLIAM. 1987. *The Navajo language: A grammar and colloquial dictionary*. Revised. Albuquerque: University of New Mexico Press. ISBN 0-8263-1014-1.
- YOUNG, SAMUEL HALL. 1886. "The first book in the Tlinkit language". *The Glacier* 1(9): 9. Actual volume, number, and date is uncertain. From Alaska State Museum archives.

Names index

This is an index of all personal and place names occurring in the text, including names which appear in citations and in the bibliography. Bold page numbers indicate the main reference for a Tlingit name, generally where the meaning and gloss are given.

- Alaska, Gulf of, 30
Alaska, Southeast, 29
Alexander Archipelago, 29, 31
Angoon, see *Aangóon*
Anonymous, 5, 227
Atlin, see *Aatlein*
Auke, see *Áak'w*
- Bakke, Margaret, 3
Bering, Vitus, 16
Bessell, Nicola, 10, 39, 205, 207, 230
Black, Lydia, 16, 17, 228
Boas, Franz, 5, 15, 27, 39, 46, 50, 60, 227
Buschmann, Johann Karl Eduard, 26, 200, 227
- Cable, Seth, 81, 189, 190, 227
Chirikov, Aleksei, 16
Cook, Eung-Do, 183, 227
- Dauenhauer, Nora Marks, 6
Dauenhauer, Nora Marks, 16, 17, 41, 56, 61, 65, 83, 149, 150, 194, 195, 227, 228
Dauenhauer, Richard, 6, 17, 41, 56, 61, 65, 83, 149, 150, 194, 195, 227, 228
- Davis, Henry, 230
Davydov, Gavriil Ivanovich, 24, 228
Dakká Kwáan, 36
De La Grasserie, Raoul, 27, 228
De Laguna, Frederica, 18, 19, 24, 26, 27, 29, 34, 228
Deisheetaan, 3
Dick, Emma, 3
Dixon Entrance, 29
Durlach, Theresa Mayer, 27, 82, 228
Dzéiwsh, 3
- Eil'ká Kwáan*, 30, 36
Emmons, George Thornton, 5, 29, 228
Engstrom, Allan, 16
- Gaanyaa*, 3
Goddard, Pliny Earle, 27, 228
Graham Island, 30
Gunyah, Evans, 3
Gaanax.ádi, 3
Gunanaa, 36

- Hargus, Sharon, 137, 230
Hitch, Doug, 5, 31, 34, 45, 54, 60, 61, 63, 69, 83, 87, 148, 169, 204, 230
Hoijer, Harry, 137, 228
Hoonah, see *Xunyaa*
Hope III, Andrew, 83–85, 88, 228
Hyder (USA), 29
- Jackson, Mike, 228
Jetté, Jules, 137, 228
Jones, Eliza, 137, 228
Jones, Livingston F., 27, 228
- Kake, see *K'éix'*
Kamenskii, Anatolii, 24, 228
Kan, Sergei, 29, 35, 229
Kari, James, 82, 229
Kakáak'w Hít, 3
Kelly, William A., 15, 16, 27, 229
Klawock, see *Lawaak*
Kraft, Sue, 228
Krause, Aurel, 49
Krause, Aurel, 26, 29, 44, 45, 229
Krauss, Michael E., 123, 229
- La Pérouse Jean-François de Galaup, Comte de, 19, 21, 229
Langara Island, 30
Langdon, Stephen, 30
Latham, R. G., 26, 229
Lawaak, 3
Leer, Jeff, 5, 15, 16, 31, 34, 45, 46, 54, 60, 61, 63, 69, 82, 83, 87, 88, 104, 105, 123, 124, 130, 140–145, 147, 148, 169, 176, 189, 204, 221, 229–231
Li, Fang-Kuei, 49
Lingít Aaní, 29
- Maddieson, Ian, 40
Maddieson, Ian, 10, 39, 205, 207, 230
Metcalf, Peter, 228
- Miller, Ray, 27, 39, 230
Mithun, Marianne, 40, 230
Moore, Patrick J., 198, 199, 230
Morgan, William, 114, 232
Müller, Friedrich, 26, 230
- Nadezhdin, Ivan, 26, 230
Naish, Constance M., 5, 15, 52, 54, 60, 82, 89, 92, 111, 114, 115, 117, 135, 136, 143–146, 150–152, 154, 157–172, 189, 204, 230, 231
- Oberg, Kalervo, 27, 29, 230
Olson, Ronald LeRoy, 27, 29, 230
Oonyeik, 3
- Panhandle, The, 29
Portland Canal, 29
Prince William Sound, 30
- Queen Charlotte Islands, 30
- Rice, Keren, 107, 109, 134, 137, 227, 230
Ritter, John, 5, 31, 34, 45, 54, 60, 61, 63, 69, 83, 87, 148, 169, 204, 230
- Sapir, Edward, 49
Schäufele, Steven, 189, 231
Shotridge, Louis, 39, 46
Shotridge, Louis, 27, 231
Shtax'héen, 3
Sitka, see *Sheet'ká*
Smith, Caroline L., 10, 39, 205, 207, 230
Stewart (Canada), 29
Story, Gillian L., 5, 15, 52, 60, 82, 89, 92, 111, 114, 115, 117, 135, 136, 139, 143–146, 150–152, 154, 157–176, 204, 230, 231
- Suckling, Cape, 30
Swanton, John, 49
Swanton, John R., 15, 27, 46, 60, 87, 104, 139, 231

- Teslin, see *Deisleen*
Thompson, Chad, 137, 231
Tuxekan, see *T'akjik'aan*
T'akjik'aan, 3
- Vajda, Edward T., 137, 231
Velten, Henry, 27, 231
Veniaminov, Ioann, 49
Veniaminov, Ivan, 15, 24, 26, 200, 231
- Wilhelm, Andrea, 77, 231
Willard, Frances H., 15, 16, 27, 229
Williams, Emma, 5, 45, 46, 231
Williams, Frank, 5, 45, 46, 231
Wrangell, see *Kaachxana.áak'w*
Wrangell, Ferdinand Petrovich von, 24,
232
- Xunaa*, see *Xunyaa*
- Yaakwdaat*, 30
Yan Wuliháshi Hít, 3
Young, Robert W., 114, 183, 232
Young, Samuel Hall, 27, 232
- K'éex'*, see *K'éix'*

Languages index

This is an index of all languages which are mentioned within the text.

!Xóõ, 40

Ahtna, 107

Akimel O'odham, 26

Athabaskan languages, 41

Cantonese, 196

English, 45

Eyak, 88

Kaska, 198

Kolosch, 4

Pre-Tlingit, 41

Proto-Athabaskan, 104

Proto-Na-Dene, 104

Southern Tutchone, see Tutchone,
Southern

Tagish, 41

Tutchone, Southern, 41

Ubykh, 40

Колош, 4

Колуж, 4

Topical index

This is an index of general topics throughout the text. Bold page numbers indicate the main reference for an entry. Italic page numbers refer to a table.

- adjectives, 91
 - inventory, 91
- affricate
 - lateral, 9
 - vs. stop+fricative, 6
- allomorphophone, 41
- anaptyxis
 - noun suffixes, 63
- anterior, *see* consonants, anterior
- approximant
 - labial-velar, 9, 41, 46
 - lateral
 - lack of, 9
 - palatal, 9, 41, 46
 - velar, 9, 39, 41, 45
 - allophone, 48
 - archiphoneme, 41
 - conditioned split, 46
 - extinction of, 41, 45
 - symbols, 41
 - transcriptions of, 41
- at.óowu*, 8
- bilingualism, 194
- cases
 - ablative, 11
 - absolute, 11
 - adessive, 11
 - allative, 11
 - ergative, 11
 - grammatical, 11
 - instrumental, 11
 - local, 11
 - locative, 11
 - perlative, 11
 - pertingent, 11
 - punctual, 11
- citations
 - abbreviation, 5, 226
- Coastal Tlingit, *see* Tlingit, people, Coastal
- code-switching
 - narrative, 194
- conjunct, *see* domain, conjunct
- consonants
 - allophony, 40, 41
 - anterior, **40**
 - innovation, 41
 - inventory, 9, 40
 - peculiarities, 40
 - size, 40
 - marginal, 40, 41

- posterior, 40
- sequences, 54
 - unusual, 54
- unique, 9
- contact
 - European, 16
- contrastive pair, 42
- diminutive
 - phrasal, 63
 - suffix, 63
- disjunct, *see* domain, disjunct
- domain
 - conjunct, 107
 - disjunct, 107
 - suffix, 107
- ergativity, 11
- fricative
 - ejective, 9, 40
 - glottal
 - labialized, 39, 41
 - rounded, 9
 - lateral, 9
- gamma, *see* approximant, velar
- glossing, 7
- grammar
 - pedagogical, 1
- hít s'aatí*, 3
- Interior Tlingit, *see* Tlingit, people, Interior
- IPA, *see* transcription, IPA
- Kolosch, *see* Tlingit, ethnonym, Russian
- Kolosh, *see* Tlingit, ethnonym, Russian
- Lingít*, 4
- Lingít Aaní*, 29
- Na-Dene languages, 41
- naa hídi*, 149
- names
 - personal, 8
- nouns, 60
 - alienable, 11, 62, 134, 134
 - alternate tone, 61
 - compounding, 10
 - denotation of, 60
 - derivation, 10
 - deverbal derivation, 60
 - dictionaries, 60
 - diminutive, 63
 - inalienable, 11, 62, 131, 132
 - referents of, 62
 - incorporation, 131, 134
 - lack of analysis, 60
 - morphology
 - complexity, 10
 - phonology, 10, 60
 - pitch accent, 61
 - possessable, 11, 61, 62
 - relational, 62, 131
 - tone sandhi, 61
- orthography
 - Revised Popular, 6
 - modifications, 6
 - this grammar, 6
- phonetics, 39
- Pima, *see* Akimel O'odham
- plosive, 43
- position class, 104
- possession, 61
 - alienability, 11, 62
 - inalienability, 11, 62
 - indefinite human, 62
 - indefinite nonhuman, 62
 - obligatory, 11, 62
 - possessability, 61

- possessive suffix, 11, 62
- third person human, 62
- third person nonhuman, 62
- posterior, see consonants, posterior
- postpositions, 11
- pronominal, 75
 - base for case/ postposition attachment, 79
- pronoun, 75
- recordings
 - early, 39
- root
 - apophony, 118
- slot-and-filler, 104
- speech
 - elicitation, 2
 - natural, 1
 - translation, 2
- split
 - conditioned, 41
- stop
 - glottal
 - labialized, 39, 41
 - rounded, 9
 - nasal
 - bilabial, 9, 39, 41
- suffix, see domain, suffix
- syllables
 - coda, 10
 - fricative, 10
 - nucleus, 10
 - onset, 10
 - structure, 10
- thematic, 110
- theme, see verb, theme
- Tlingit
 - ethnonym, 4
 - European approximation, 4
 - German, 26
 - pronunciation, 3
 - Russian, 4, 25
 - written form, 4
 - people
 - Coastal, 30
 - Interior, 36
- Tlingit people
 - Interior, 30
- tone, 49
 - correspondences, 50, 50
 - Northern Tlingit, 50
- transcription, 6
 - Americanist, 6, 39
 - IPA, 6, 39
- typology
 - consonants, 9
 - nouns, 10
 - possession, 11
 - summary, 9
 - syllables, 10
 - vowels, 9
- verb
 - affixes, 106
 - template, 104, 105
 - theme, 110
- vowels, 48
 - inventory, 9
 - Northern Tlingit, 49
 - length, 39
 - merger
 - Interior, 39
 - qualities, 39
 - register, 40
 - tone, 9, 40
 - Tongass, 9
- Колош, see Tlingit, ethnonym, Russian
- Колюж, see Tlingit, ethnonym, Russian
- Колюш, see Tlingit, ethnonym, Russian

kwáan, 37